

刘国善 总主编

《通用英语语法全程》之四

# 通用英语

## 形容词、数词教程

主编 单亦祯

广收熔炼提纯的最新资料

满足英语教学的迫切需求

精解英美名家名著例句

针对疑难，穷究深广

nglish

对外经济贸易大学出版社

刘国善总主编《通用英语语法全程》之四

# 通用英语形容词、 数词教程

主	编	单亦禎		
副	主	王志青	徐树娟	张海萍
编	者	田翠芸	贾珍霞	
		王莹	刘国善	

《通用英语语法全程》	总主编	刘国善
	总 审	王治江

对外经济贸易大学出版社

**(京)新登字 182 号**

**图书在版编目(CIP)数据**

通用英语形容词、数词教程/单亦祯主编. —北京:对外经济贸易大学出版社, 2004

(通用英语语法全程系列丛书)

ISBN 7-81078-376-9

I. 通… II. 单… III. ①英语—形容词—教材 ②英语—数量词—教材 IV. H314.2

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2004)第 085833 号

© 2004 年 对外经济贸易大学出版社出版发行

版权所有 翻印必究

## **通用英语形容词、数词教程**

单亦祯 主编

责任编辑 戴菲

---

对外经济贸易大学出版社  
北京市朝阳区惠新东街 12 号 邮政编码:100029  
网址: <http://www.uibep.com>

---

北京市山华苑印刷有限责任公司印装 新华书店北京发行所发行  
成品尺寸:140mm×203mm 8.25 印张 217 千字  
2004 年 12 月北京第 1 版 2004 年 12 月第 1 次印刷

---

ISBN 7-81078-376-9/H·065  
印数:0001—5000 册 定价:15.00 元

# 广收熔炼提纯的最新资料, 满足英语教学的迫切需求 《通用英语语法全程》——六卷总序言

这句话语法上对吗? It's worth doing the work. “做此工作是值得(下工夫)的。”

1965年, H. W. Fowler 在 A Dictionary of Modern English Usage 中说:“错了!”因为句中的 worth 必须带有补语, 而 doing... 不是补语, 却是实际的主语, 前面的 It 是引导词。

像形容词 like 作表语时要带有补语(原是介词 to 的宾语, to 现已不用)一样, 表语形容词 worth 经过历史演变, 现也直接接用名词或动名词补语。所以上面那句话应改作 It's worth while doing the work.

但是, 1975年以来, 语法家们一致说 worth 无补语的那种说法是对的:

It's worth (while) trying. (1975, Close)(while 可以略去不用)  
“试一试是值得的。”

It's worth making an effort. (1978, LDCE)“作一番努力是值得的。”

Is it worth visiting Leicester? (1980, Swan) It's not worth getting angry with her. (ib)

It's worth (while) saving the cartoons. (1985, CGEL) It's scarcely worth (while) your going home. (ib)

It's worth reading the book. (1989, ALD)

It's worth taking your time when you visit the cathedral. (1995, LDCE) “你们参观那大教堂时, 慢慢细看是值得的。”

语法总要随着语言的变化而变化。worth 有时可以不带补语。这也说明它不(如 RHD, LDCE 等英美词典所讲)属介词性质。

新世纪英语教学与英语使用,迫切需要一部囊括时代语言现象和最新研究成果的多卷本语法,该套语法能解释迄无答案的诸多新发现的问题。例如,读者能否看出以下各对语句的区别何在?

1. That's the early bird that/which caught the worm.【句法:含定语从句的复合句,先行词是 bird】那只就是抓获虫子的早出之鸟。

It's the early bird that catches the worm. (proverb)【用于特殊强调的分裂句;先行词是 It,不是 bird】捷足先登。正是早出之鸟,才能抓获虫子。

2. There was a time when man never cooked his food. (RHD)【a time when, 新信息】

What's the time that she normally arrives (at)? (CGEL)【that 通常不指听者未知的新事物】

3. He's a student of Jespersen. (CGEL)【名词关系表达法:of 接名词表“动宾”关系】他是叶斯帕森的研究者。

He was a student of Jespersen's. (CGEL)【of, s' 双重所属形式表“归属”关系】他曾是叶斯帕森的一个学生。

4. Mr. Black is going to leave the bar for the church. (NDEC)【定冠词类指】布莱克先生将脱离律师行业去做牧师。

The bells are ringing for church. (NDEC)【零位冠词概括指,指抽象活动】钟声在响,让人们去做礼拜。

5. There was nothing to do.【动词不定式单一形式仅指有待完成】没有什么要做的事。

There was nothing to be done.【不定式被动形式加强语气,指可能】什么办法也没有。

6. A homeless defenseless poor little girl...【形容词顺序:从抽象一般到较具体特殊的性质】

A poor little homeless defenseless girl...【把 homeless defenseless 看作更特殊的性质】

7. He had taken a kinder view of life in the postwar world. (RHD)【通常比较级】

There never was a man more kind and just. (RHD)【强调对比差异】

8. He is worse than bad. (CGEL)【同种性质程度上的比较】

He is more good than bad. (CGEL)【突出不同性质间的对比】

9. The book is 3 times as long as that one. (ALD)【规范倍数表达法】

The book is 3 times longer than that one. (ALD)【非规范倍数表达法,与上面例句同义】

10. As you brew, you must drink. One must drink as one brews. (proverb)【代词 one 比 you 郑重】自作自受。

(He) Who sows the wind shall reap the whirlwind. (proverb)【不用 He,以 Who 引导的名词从句为主语是古旧说法】挑拨事端的,将自食恶果。

11. Tell me truly what you think. (ALD)【truly 本为方式副词,修饰动词】

She's truly not so nice a hostess. She's not truly so nice a hostess.【转作语气副词,可修饰句中的不同成份】

12. The man in front of me let me go first. (LLAV)【in front of 表相对静态关系】

There were over one hundred people ahead of us in the queue to get into the cinema. (LLAV)【复合介词 ahead of 表动态关系】

Aren't you before those people in the queue? (ib)【before 在此表顺序】

13. It is very bad of you to leave him. (NDEC)【介词短语 of... 表“出于本心/本性”】

It's very bad for you to smoke. [for..., “对于”, 比 of... 表“本心本性适当与否”用途广泛得多]

14. He has the welfare of the poor at heart (in his heart). (DAI) I told him what was on my heart. (NDEC) [at..., 位于某点或模糊位置; on..., 位于或压在某面之上]

In her heart of hearts she knew that the evil day could not be long postponed. (Dreiser) [in..., 位于有相当深度的空间之中]

对于语法中的规则似乎没有人问过的“为什么”, 如果我们试着问个清楚, 会有助于记清和用好有关规则。例如上面第二对例句中的 time when/time that 之分, 牵涉到引导定语从句关系代词 which/that 的选择。常用的 all that..., the only thing that ... 短语, 同样因为 that 含有确指意味。而表“类属”使用关系代词 which, 就因为它有不确指含义: John is not the scholar which James is. (RHD)

又如以下各对语句, 为什么前面标有 \* 的是错误说法, 而后面的是正确的?

1. \* (When) Making up prescriptions, some tablets have to be divided into four. (RWRT) 【句法: 无依着修饰语】

Seeing you are ill, the performance will have to be cancelled. (RWRT) 【Seeing..., Speaking of..., Considering..., 等属惯用语气状语】

2. \* the child of the artist's 【名词所有格已包含确指意义, 名词短语前不得再使用定冠词】

A child/That (lazy) child of the artist's ... 【强调不确指的或具有某特性的 child】

3. \* the painting of my sister's 【要说 the/a painting of my sister, 意即 (the) one representing my sister, of 在此表动宾关系】画了我姐

姐的画

A painting of my sister's ...【意即 one belonging to or done by my sister, of 与's 同用表所有关系或主谓关系】我姐姐的画(属于她或由她画的)

4. \* a growl as frightening as that of a tiger's

A growl as frightening as a tiger's/as frightening as that of a tiger...

5. \* Who cuts my hair has moved to another hairdresser's. 【代词用法:要说 The man/woman who cuts...】

Who keeps company with wolves will learn to howl. 【前无代词 He 等或名词,以 Who (whom)引导的名词从句为主语(宾语)是古旧说法】

6. \* Whom I loved and would get married to suddenly disappeared. 【要说 The man whom I loved and ...】

The man I loved and would get married to suddenly disappeared. Whom Fortune would ruin, she robs of his wits. 命运要毁灭谁,就先剥夺他的理智。

7. \* It is to rain before dark. 【动词形式 is to do 表示人为的安排】

It is going to rain/He is going to be( is to be) back before dark. 【is going to..., 预计】

8. \* They caught my napping in class. (应改作 caught me napping) 【分词型复合宾语; catch 不可接用 my napping 动名词短语】

They denied my/me napping in class. 【deny 接用动名词短语/复合结构宾语,前后二句表明“现在分词”不等于“动名词”】

9. \* propose/suggest him to go【不合惯用法】

advise/recommend him to go. 【惯用动宾句型】

10. \* advice/recommend/suggest to buy a good dictionary【不合惯用法】



advice/recommend/propose/suggest buying a good dictionary...

【惯用】

11. \* advise/propose/suggest me a Chinese novel【不合于惯用动宾句型】

What did she advise/recommend you? She recommended me a Chinese novel. 【惯用】

ALD(*Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*) 以前讲解动宾句型时,列出 25 种 verb pattern,其中很多种又包含更加细分的不同类型,用 VP1A...VP25C 等为标志。后来,较新版本的 ALD 把非表意符号 1A、2B 等换成表意符号 Tt(transitive verb + to infinitive), Cni(complex transitive verb + noun + infinitive), Dnn(double transitive verb + noun + noun) 等,但是罗列的句型还是太多,有三十多种,难以记清。而国内现在还没有其他工具书能够把动宾句型讲述得这么仔细。

又要讲细,又要好记,做得到吗? 做得到! 这就必须区分非疑难句型和疑难句型。我们把非疑难的多种排除在外,只剩下 12 种易混易错的疑难动宾句型,各以区分明确的表意符号代表。12 种中又有 8 种的搭配关系还有一定规律可循,最后只是 4 种最难掌握的句型(见《通用英语动词、动宾句型教程》第 12 章末到 13 章、14 章),我就此把 300 多个常用动词分门别类,讲明所接宾语类型,可谓全盘而有条理地解决了动词用法的一大难题,比西方独特的 A. S. Hornby 所著的 *A Guide to English Verb Patterns and Usage* 更进了一步。

英语动词有没有一般体? 有人说英语只有进行体和完成体;而我们看到法语、俄语有未完成体对应于完成体,未完成体有其表示进行的形式,实际英语一般体和进行体都属于“未完成”,是完成的对立面。该不该把“将来时”纳入时态系统? will finish 是属词汇手段(类似 be about to finish)还是属“分析形式”的词形变化手段(类似 have finished)? 法语和西班牙语的体、时系统,已用“实意动词 + 助动词”

合成一词的“综合形式”来表示将来时：法语 finirai/finiras 本由分析形式 finir ai/as 缩略而成，原相当于 I/You finish have 或 I/You have to finish。

英语自古留下的“虚拟语气”体系是否仍然存在？（如德语、法语、西班牙语保存了更完整的虚拟系统。）

北京大学岑麒祥教授在谈印欧语族比较语言学的发展时说：“历史比较语言学解决了许多传统语言学所不能解决的问题… 忽视历史发展，就会对现存语法体系的某些现象无法加以适当的估量。”恩格斯批判杜林“伪造的技术语法”，说它“一不顾自身已经死亡的形式，二不顾同类活的和死的语言”，“由于缺乏历史的基础而带有自己全部的诡辩性和任意性。”对于现代英语语法许多争议问题，能不能也通过纵向的历史发展与横向的多语种比较，求得解决呢？我们不但提出了英语历史的演变和同族语言的类比，而且是从动态、辩证的高度对其做出了阐述。

讲解语法时应当把对立统一方法装在心中，用在实处。各种反粒子的发现，也在证实相对论的普遍真理。五四新文化运动先驱张申府先生说：“科学是学，哲学是学之学。”由科学充实了的哲学，回过头来指引着科学。中山大学王宗炎教授评论“转换一生成语法”时说：“由于 Chomsky 的哲学基础不可靠，由于他的研究方向和方法大有问题，很难指望他有什么宝贵贡献或重大突破。”又说：“外国学者的学说，也跟一般引进的东西一样，须得放在各种检查仪之下检查一番。”带头人教给我们的治学之术，应使我们对国外有其价值的新资料，熔炼而提纯，而不是照搬。

以下引自西方论述的三组例句，是一类用语中两两对应的标本，这种未经着重指明的“相反相成”关系 (Extremes meet)，我们应强调其实际是所有各方面纵横关联的代表。

It's not the first time he has failed to turn up, is it? (!)(UCEG)

【反义附加问句】(升调或降调)

You have tea at four, don't you? (!) (Alexander)【否定反义附加问句】(升调或降调)

Oh, that's what you believe, is it? (UCEG)【同义附加问句, 追问】

So you don't like my cooking, don't you? (Swan)【否定同义附加问句, 强势追问】

Have you seen him yet? (CGEL)【通常问句, 用非肯定词语 yet】  
你已经见到他了吗?

Haven't you seen him yet? (ib)【否定疑问句, 认为情况应属肯定】你不是已经见到他了吗?

Have you already seen him? (ib)【肯定意向用语 already 在此表达惊讶】你这就已见到他了?

Haven't you already seen him? (ib)【否定疑问句中, 认为情况必属肯定】你不是确实已见到他了吗?

She could/might have gone off with some friends — it was Saturday. 【过去主/客观或然性】

I met her soon after the war. It would/should have been around March 1966. 【过去主/客观倾向性】

You could/might have told me Frances was ill. 【过去主/客观可能性, 未实现, 指本应而未曾告诉我】

The potatoes would/should have been better with a bit more salt. 【过去主/客观倾向性, 未实现】(比较 must have been ..., 过去必然)

又如, the rat/horse 多用于“确指”, a rat/horse 多用于“不确指”(两种所指都属“特指”)。而在 A rat is larger than a mouse. 和 The tractor has replaced the horse. 中, a rat 和 the horse 却是表示以个体或以总体代表的“类指”(“泛指”的一种)。The sun was right above the head. (高于其上) Over our heads hung heavy clouds. (覆盖于上)

Parts of Holland are below sea level. (低于其下) The fields are under water after the heavy rain. (覆盖于下)

同属纵横关联的还有语气副词中的四种(同表对客观关系的主观说明)超越:even;局限:only;转折:yet;类同:also 等等。

下列成对范畴的提出,都是辩证观点在英语语法中的体现,有助于全面系统地掌握语言规律:

实词及某些实词的虚化	——虚词及某些虚词的名词/动词化
无限名称词类	——有限名目词类
本体代词	——属性代词
肯定词语及疑问句中的肯定意向	——(疑问/否定/条件句)非肯定词语
动句	——静句
动表(“动词+表语”)	
性复合谓语	——“情态”复合谓语
主谓性复合宾语	——主表性复合宾语
情态动词所表的主观势态	——客观势态(客观可能、倾向、必要)
语句的客观陈述	——所加的主观语气
限制性语气状语	——非限制性语气状语
居动词/表语前位/后位的状语	——外位状语
状语从句所表横向对应关系	——纵向因果关系
顺推条件句	——逆推条件句

我们编写的六卷一套语法教程(分别论述句法、名词与冠词、动词与动宾句型、形容词与数词、代词与替代词、副词介词与连词;各卷书名见封底)力求既不脱离教学语法的合理根基,又在每章每节都萌发出新生枝叶与鲜美果实。这是教学群体几十年实践与科研的汇

报。我们热情期待读者和外语专家们给以指点。

为兼顾初阶、中阶、高阶学习人员,全书各章节的深度广度不同。查阅时宜各取所需。当以其为教材时,教师可有所选择:在公共外语课堂上,可跳过个别片段;而在英语专业课堂上,则可着重讲授较为深广的论述。用作非专业英语语法教材,6本书主干部分可讲两个学期;用作专业教材,全书可于三个学期左右授完。

我们所配练习的特色之一,是精选了名家名著(这些名家有: Andersen (丹麦), Carroll (《艾丽斯漫游奇境记》), Churchill, Dickinson, E. B. Browning, Emerson, Franklin, Gorky (俄罗斯), Grim Brothers (德国), Helen Keller (盲聋作家), Lincoln, Longfellow, Martin Luther King (黑人活动家), O'Henry, Princess Diana (“人民的王妃”黛安娜), Stevenson, Tagore (印度), Thoreau (《瓦尔登湖》作者梭罗), Whitman 等)。这不但把空洞的语法条条和典范语言实践结合起来,而且引导读者细致理解最珍奇的诗文。我们不避少量较艰深文字,而是对其加了注释和译文。所以兴趣就蕴含在难度中。

最后,全书总主编要代表各卷主编和全体编者,向关注并支持我们勇挑重担的王晓玲、刘慧君、顾永才、刘传志、刘军教授敬致谢忱;向引导并激励我们奋力开拓的程慕胜、熊德兰、熊德轲、王宗炎教授深表感激。

《通用英语语法全程》总主编

2004 夏于渤海滨、燕山麓、河北理工大学外语园

# 目 录

## 第一章 形容词的句法功能与按功能分类

- 1.1 形容词担任名词定语多居前位 ..... (1)
- 1.2 形容词担任属性表语 ..... (4)
- 1.3 形容词所任后位定语可归为表语性质 ..... (5)
- 1.4 形容词所任主语补语、宾语补语也属表语性质 ..... (11)
- 1.5 形容词及其短语担任状语 ..... (14)
- 1.6 只能作定语的形容词 ..... (18)
- 1.7 只能作表语的形容词 ..... (22)
- 1.8 作定语和作表语意义相同与不同的形容词 ..... (25)

## 第二章 形容词按意义分类

- 2.1 性质、状态形容词 ..... (34)
- 2.2 关系形容词 ..... (36)
- 2.3 绝对性状形容词与相对可比形容词 ..... (37)
- 2.4 表示国籍、民族、地区的形容词 ..... (38)
- 2.5 不同意义的-ic/-ical/gold/golden 等 ..... (42)
- 2.6 褒义与贬义形容词及褒贬词义的演变 ..... (44)
- 2.7 委婉用语、诗文用语中的形容词 ..... (48)
- 2.8 形容词与属性代词的区别 ..... (50)

## 第三章 形容词按形式与构成分类

- 3.1 简单形容词 ..... (62)

3.2	加后缀派生而成的形容词	(64)
3.3	加前缀派生而成的形容词	(69)
3.4	以前缀“a-”构成的形容词为何多属表语形容词	(72)
3.5	“状语性名词 + 形容词”care-free, sea-sick 等	(74)
3.6	-ing 型复合形容词	(75)
3.7	“-ed /-t/-en”型复合形容词(包括其他词尾 类型过去分词构成者)	(77)
3.8	“名词 + -ed”型复合形容词 four-wheel(ed)等	(79)
3.9	“修饰语 + 名词”型复合形容词 four-star 等	(80)
3.10	复合形容词的连结	(83)

#### 第四章 形容词的名词化与名词定语、 名词转成形容词

4.1	形容词兼名词	(89)
4.2	形容词前加 the(泛指或确指)名词化用法	(90)
4.3	形容词前加 a/an 的名词化用法	(94)
4.4	不加冠词的形容词用作名词	(94)
4.5	形容词加 -s/-es 转作名词	(95)
4.6	名词单数、复数形式担任定语	(96)
4.7	名词定语和形容词的比较	(98)
4.8	名词转成形容词	(100)

#### 第五章 形容词与副词之相异与相通

5.1	形容词与副词的同形异用	(107)
5.2	加-ly 构成副词的形容词	(110)
5.3	非副词而以-ly 结尾的形容词	(112)
5.4	形容词可用作相应的带-ly 形式的副词	(113)
5.5	容易弄混弄错的 high(ly), hard(ly), easy /easily,	

quick(ly), likely 等形容词或副词 .....	(114)
5.6 形容词短语状语与副词短语状语的异同 .....	(117)
5.7 独立形容词短语结构担任状语 .....	(119)

## 第六章 形容词与分词之相异与相通

6.1 现在分词兼形容词 .....	(125)
6.2 过去分词兼形容词 .....	(127)
6.3 完全形容词化的 exciting 等-ing 形式 .....	(132)
6.4 -ed 中元音发音的 learned 等过去分词形容词 .....	(134)
6.5 分词形容词前修饰语 much 与 very 等度量副词 .....	(135)
6.6 分词形容词后的 by, with 等介词用法 .....	(137)

## 第七章 形容词的两种比较级最高级形式

7.1 规则的比较级和最高级形式 .....	(143)
7.2 不规则的比较级最高级形式 .....	(146)
7.3 选用 -er/-est 词尾型还是 more/most 助词型 .....	(149)
7.4 强调比较级 .....	(153)
7.5 “原级、比较级、最高级”比较用语及歧义之避免 .....	(157)
7.6 最高级的比较范围 .....	(168)
7.7 比较级和最高级的修饰语 .....	(171)

## 第八章 形容词惯用法

8.1 形容词的前位修饰语 .....	(175)
8.2 形容词的后位修饰语 .....	(177)
8.3 必带后位介词短语修饰语, 不可单用的形容词 .....	(186)
8.4 时、空、重量、价值等度量搭配 .....	(189)
8.5 “what /such a/an + 形容词 + 名词”与 “how/so/as/too 形容词 + a/an + 名词” .....	(191)
8.6 并列形容词间用或不用 and .....	(192)



## 第九章 表序形容词和序数词

- 9.1 表序形容词 next, last, final 等 ..... (197)
- 9.2 序数词兼名词、副词 ..... (199)
- 9.3 first, second, third 等带与不带 -ly 的用法 ..... (201)
- 9.4 带序数词帝王称号的说法和写法 ..... (201)
- 9.5 几十几世纪、几十年代表达法 ..... (202)
- 9.6 可用基数词代替序数词表示序号 ..... (202)

## 第十章 表数形容词与基数词

- 10.1 形容词 double, multiple, only, sole, several, single 等  
表示数量 ..... (205)
  - 10.2 数词兼代词 one ..... (205)
  - 10.3 可用与必用 a 代 one 的情况; one 等数词用于成语 ... (207)
  - 10.4 万万, 百万, 千, 百等大数的读法 ..... (209)
  - 10.5 零的多种表达方式 ..... (210)
  - 10.6 小数与分数的读法 ..... (212)
  - 10.7 计算的口头说法示例 ..... (214)
  - 10.8 年、月、日不同说法与记法 ..... (216)
  - 10.9 英美金额表达法 ..... (219)
  - 10.10 时间、距离、面积、体积、重量等数量 ..... (220)
  - 10.11 复数形式的 dozens, hundreds, thousands, millions,  
billions 等 ..... (222)
  - 10.12 其他约略数额表达法 ..... (223)
- 例句出处略语表(主要参考书目) ..... (228)
- 练习题参考答案 ..... (234)

# 第一章 形容词的句法功能与按功能分类

## 1.1 形容词担任名词定语多居前位

形容词主要用法之一就是充当名词的定语。它作定语时多置于被修饰名词之前,但有时要置于其后(见 1.2)。

单个形容词作前置定语时,形容词在名词词组中的位置一般为:冠词/代词 + 形容词 + 名词。例如:

a nice day 一个晴朗的天儿

a young man 一位年轻的男子

a round table 一张圆桌

blue eyes 蓝眼睛

her gray hair 她的灰白头发

the black one(s) 黑人(或物) (形容词作代词 one 的定语)

形容词词组(形容词为副词所修饰而构成的词组)作定语时多前置,形成“限定词(冠/数/代词) + 副 + 形 + 名”的序列:

an almost impossible thing 几乎不可能的事情

a fairly strong foreign accent 很重的外国口音

one highly intelligent student 一名非常聪明的学生

this nearly dark room 这个几乎黑暗的房间

that pretty rare metal 那种颇为稀有的金属

the quite normal question 那个很正常的问题

two relatively small balls 两个相对小的球儿

somewhat not easy jobs 不太容易做的工作

但如果形容词由 rather, quite, such, so 等几个副词所修饰,而该形容词所在的名词词组中带有不定冠词 a/an 时,此类副词经常放在“a/an + 形容词 + 名词”之前。例如:

rather an unusual question 很不寻常的问题

quite a sudden change 特别突然的变化

such a naughty boy (= so naughty a boy) 如此淘气的男孩

但 rather 和 quite 放在 a/an 之后,形容词之前,也是正确的说法:

a rather difficult task 一项相当艰难的任务

I've got a rather bad cold. 我得了相当严重的感冒。

He died after a rather short illness. 他病了不久就死了。

We had a quite good time. 我们过得相当愉快。

This is a quite comfortable house. 这是一所相当舒服的房子。

《朗文英语语法》说,“quite a/an (或 a quite) + 形容词 + 名词”具有积极的修辞效果:

It is quite an interesting film/a quite interesting film. 这是一部相当有趣的电影。

两个或两个以上并列的形容词作前置定语时,可用连词连接或用逗号隔开。例如:

a handsome and daring hero 一位英俊而勇敢的英雄

that narrow and dark hall 那又窄又暗的门厅

a tall but very graceful woman 个子很高,但体态优雅的妇女

a pretty, intelligent girl 或 a pretty and intelligent girl 一位漂亮、聪明的姑娘

但表示不同方面属性实际不是并列关系的形容词,不用 and 连结 (详见 8.7), 如:

the tall, dark, handsome young man 那位高个子、黑皮肤、英俊  
的年轻男子

some remarkable conjuring tricks 非凡的魔术

many other distinguished American literary men (三个形容词分别表示“性质”与不同“关系”) 其他许多卓越的美国文人

当我们用两个以上的形容词去修饰一个名词时, 必须注意其词序。这些形容词的词序主要由它们的语义特征来决定。下面讲一下前置定语形容词的 4 种位置:

1) 远中位形容词, 远中位形容词指在限定词之后的一些性质形容词(表绝对性质, 不可比较) 例如: certain, sheer, complete, 等等。

2) 中位形容词, 指一些表示可比较性质的形容词, 如: ugly, intelligent, beautiful 等。

3) 近中位形容词, 指颜色形容词如: red, pink 等, 及一些分词转成的形容词, 如: retired, sleeping 等。

4) 相对近位形容词, 即关系形容词, 指一些由名词派生的、表示民族和种族背景的形容词, 如:

根据上述, 我们可以将形容词的一般词序归纳于下面的表中:

远 位		中 位			近 位					
(1)(2)(3) 冠 代 数 词 词 词	远 中 位	中 位			近 中	(17)(18)(19)(20)(21) 国 地 出 物 名 籍 区 处 质 词				
	(4) 不 可 比 性 质	(5)(6)(7)(8)(9)(10) 品 性 大 长 高 形 质 质 小 短 低 状	(11)(12)(13)(14) 样 味 新 年 式 道 旧 龄	(15)(16) 颜 分 色 词	材 定 料 语					

例如：

this first important long French novel

a beautiful old brown French handmade kitchen cupboard  
(Alexander) 一个漂亮、古老、棕色、法国产、手工制造的厨房  
用橱柜

all the many other small inconspicuous carved jade idols (CGEL)  
所有那么多其他小巧、不惹人注意的玉雕神像

those beautiful old European cathedral cities 那些漂亮的、古老  
的、欧洲各地建有大教堂的城市

## 1.2 形容词担任属性表语

表语可分为属性表语和本体表语。

既能充当前置定语，又能充当表语的形容词，可以担任属性表语。它们无论作定语还是作表语都是表明名词的属性。英语中大多数形容词都具有这种功能。例如：

The car is green. 那辆车是绿色的。

That is a green car. 那是辆绿色的车。

They have painted that car green. (green 为宾语 car 的补语，实属“宾语的表语”性质)他们把那辆车漆成绿色的了。

属性表语一般出现在连系动词后面，表示性质、状态、感受等。

1) 表性质、状态

联系动词 be 后，如：

This girl is friendly. 这姑娘很友好。

Giggles was very ill, but he's now a healthy man. 吉戈尔斯曾病  
得非常厉害，可现在是个健康人。

Was the car expensive? 那辆汽车很贵吗？

Isn't Miss Jackson pretty? 杰克逊小姐不是很漂亮吗?

## 2) 表变化或不变

这类联系动词有: become, come, remain, keep, stay, get, go, grow, prove, turn, turn out,

例如:

The girl became very restless. 这个姑娘变得一点也闲不住。

That piece of bean-curd went sour. 那块豆腐酸了。

Leaves have turned brown in the mountains. 山里的树叶已变成了棕色。

The rumor turned out (to be) true. 那谣言后来证明是真的。

## 3) 表感受

这种联系动词有: appear, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste 等, 例如:

This medicine tastes bitter. 这种药有苦味。

She seems very happy. 她好像很幸福。

He looks tired. 看上去他很累。

可以担任本体表语的是表示事物本身的名词或代词, 例如:

That's a car. 那是汽车。

That's theirs. 那是他们的。

### 1.3 形容词所任后位定语可归为表语性质

形容词所任定语多居前位(见 1.1), 但在某些搭配中只能后置, 不能前置, 也就是说它们只能紧跟在所修饰的名词或代词后面。因为这些后置定语相当于定语从句, 且在从句中起表语作用, 所以也可归为表语性质。这种具有表语性质的后置形容词在下列 9 种情况下

使用：

1) 修饰以 -body, -one, -thing 结尾的复合不定代词时。如：  
Anyone (who is) intelligent can do it. 任何一个聪明人都能做这件事。

I want to try on something (that is) larger. 我想试穿较大的一件。

2) 当名词被一个形容词的最高级、only 或表特定顺序的 last、next 等修饰时，以 -able 或 -ible 结尾的形容词修饰同一名词时，该 -able/-ible 形容词可以置于后位。注意：这类形容词也可以置于前位。例如：

the best use (which is) possible (也可以说 the best possible use)  
再好没有的用途

the only actor (who is) suitable (也可以说 the only suitable actor)  
唯一合适的演员

the next proposal acceptable (也可以说 the next acceptable proposal)  
下一个可以接受的建议

3) 当两上或多个形容词用连词连结为定语时。如：

a man (who is) good and noble 仁慈而高尚的人

the truth (that is) pure and simple 纯粹的真话

an explanation (that is) simple and straightforward 简单而坦率的解释

Never had I seen a face so happy, sweet and radiant. 我从未见过如此幸福、甜美、容光焕发的面孔。

这种后位定语也可以是非限制性的，相当于非限制性定语从句，用停顿(书面逗号)与所修饰名词隔开：

The problem, pure and simple, is finding a babysitter. (= The

problem, which is pure and simple, is... ) 简单而明确的问题是找一个看小孩的保姆。

The question, pure and simple, is whether you will support me.  
( = The question, which is pure and simple, is... ) 简单而明了的问题是你能不肯支持我。

4) 有少数几个 a- 形容词, 如: ablaze, afloat 等, 和 present, absent, concerned, involved, 等形容词, 当它们表示“短暂性”特征, 而不是“永久性”特征时, 如:

The men (who were) present were his supporters. 在场的人都是他的支持者。

The house (which is) ablaze is next door to mine. 着火的房子在我们隔壁。

The boats (which were) afloat were not seen by the bandits. 水面上的那些小船没被歹徒看见。

The people (who were) involved were not found. 牵连此事的人都没找到。

比较: the involved people 中的前位定语 involved 表示“永久性”特征, 词意是: 有关人员。

5) 带介词短语、不定式或不定式短语的形容词作定语时, 例如:

I know an actor (who is) suitable for the part. 我认识一个适合那个角色的演员。

The boys (who were) easiest to teach were in my class. 那些最好教的男学生们在我班里。

Students (who are) brave enough to attempt the course deserve to succeed. 敢于选读这门课程的学生就理应成功。



They have a house (that is) larger than yours. 他们有一所房子, 比你的大。

带修饰语的形容词往往本身作前位定语, 而修饰它的较扩展状语(介词短语、不定式短语等)则放在名词后面, 但这种说法有时不那么正式, 例如:

They have a larger house than yours. 他们有一座房子比你的大。  
The easiest boys to teach were in my class. (The boys easiest to teach...) 最好教的男孩子在我班里。

This is a different story from what you told me yesterday. 这个故事与昨天你告诉我的那个不同。

This is a similar letter to the one I had the other day. 这是一封与我在前几天收到的相似的信。

He has enough money to be independent. 他有足够保障自己独立的钱财。

This is a difficult book to read. 这是一部难读的书。

He turned out to be as nice a man as he looked. 原来他人如其表, 心地和善。

如果把 enough、too 或 so 连同它们所修饰的形容词放在名词短语中的不定冠词(或零冠词)之前, 这个形容词就可以和它所带的状语分开。(这种结构多用于文学语言中)例如:

She is brave enough a student to attempt the course. (= She is a student brave enough to...) 她是一名足以敢于试修那门课的学生。

It was too boring a book to read. (= It was a book too boring to read). 那是一本读起来非常无聊的书。

enough 所修饰的形容词前, 加 not, 这种结构更常使用:

She is not brave enough a student to attempt the course. 她是个没有足够勇气来攻读这门课程的学生。

但是,对 enough 和 too 修饰的形容词的结构来说,只有形容词短语用作主语或宾语的一部分时,这种前后分隔的结构方能成立。

Brave enough the soldier to blow the enemy's fortifications deserved admiration. 敢于爆破敌人工事的战士值得钦佩。

He led too busy a life to have much time for reflection. (busy 定语,限定宾语 a life) 他过的是没有多少时间可以反思的忙碌生活。

对 so 修饰形容词的结构来说,如果形容词短语是主语或宾语的一部分,前后所述两种结构同样成立:

A man so difficult to please must be hard to work with. 如此难以取悦的人必定难以与其共事。

So difficult a man to please must be hard to work with.

I've never seen so beautiful a child. 我从没见过这么漂亮的小孩。

He's never again written so good a book as his first one. (LDCE)  
他写的第一部书是他唯一的最佳作品。

He admired himself for being able to frequent so costly a palace.  
他很满意自己能够经常游览如此豪华的宫殿。

But how could I do it at so short a notice? 但时间这么短,我能来得及做什么呢?

不过,某些较短的介词短语也可以前置,修饰一个前位定语形容词:

a by no means irresponsible action = an action (that is) by no means irresponsible 绝对不是不负责任的行动

通常表示度量的复合修饰语也可以放在所修饰的成分后面。

如:

a mountain 5,000 feet (非正式语可用 foot) high (= a 5,000-foot-high mountain 中不可用 feet) 5,000 英尺高的山

a river two hundred miles long 一条 200 英里长的河

a road fifty feet wide 一条 50 英尺宽的路

a man eighty-five years old 一个 85 岁的男人

6) 在一些“头衔”中,如:

attorney general	检查总长
the heir apparent	确定继承人
postmaster general	邮政总局局长
president elect	当选总统
sergeant major	军士长

7) 某些惯用语中:

Asia Minor 小亚西亚

body politic 政治统一体

all the people present 所有在场的人们

by all means possible 用一切可行的办法

Goodness gracious! 天哪!

hope eternal 永恒的希望

letters patent 专利证书

notary public (或 public notary) 公证人, 公证员

penny dreadful 廉价的恐怖(或惊险)小说;刊登恐怖故事的廉价书刊

poet laureate 桂冠诗人

proof positive 确凿的证据

sum total 总计

from time immemorial 远古以来

vice-chancellor designate 当选(选出而未上任的)副校长

8) 前面有 the 的形容词也可置于专有名词之后。如:

Alfred the Great 阿尔弗莱德大王(中古英格兰西南部维塞克斯王国的国王)

Alexander the Great 亚历山大大帝(曾征服古希腊、古埃及、波斯, 建亚历山大帝国)

William the Conqueror 威廉一世(征服者威廉, 法国诺曼底公爵, 征服英国为王)

9) 前位定语形容词在诗中可置后:

唐代诗人杜甫“咏怀古迹之三”可英译为:

All are drawing to the Gorge, the myriad ranges and dales,

There was Mingjun born and nurtured, the palace maid.

Out of the Purple City you went on deserts **wild**,

Merely a Green Tomb's left at dusk to shimmer **mild**.

原诗: 群山万壑赴荆门, 生长明妃尚有村。

一去紫台连朔漠, 独留青冢向黄昏。

#### 1.4 形容词所任主语补语、宾语补语也属表语性质

大多数形容词不仅能用作定语、表语, 也能用作补语。所谓用作补语就是用作主语补语或宾语补语, 因为它们都是表明主语或宾语的, 故它们都属于表语性质。

1) 形容词作宾语补语(宾语和其补语构成复合宾语)

这类宾语补语可以转换成宾语从句:

We find them very pleasant. ( = We find that they are very pleasant. ) 我们发现他们很和蔼可亲。

They found the book quite instructive. ( = They found that the book was quite instructive. ) 他们发现这本书很有教育意义。

形容词也可以用作 what 引导的宾语从句的补语, 如:

I consider what he did foolish. 我认为他的所为很愚蠢。

用作宾语补语的形容词常表示动词动作所产生的结果。如:

He pulled his belt tight. 他把他的带子拉紧。

He pushed the window open. 他推开窗子。

He writes his letters large. 他的字写得大。

这种结果也可以用动词 be 陈述:

His belt is tight.

The window is open.

His letters are large.

这种结构中有些动词表示原因:

She made him happy. ( = she caused him to be happy ) 她使他幸福。

The news turned his hair white. ( = The news caused his hair to become white. ) 这消息使他的头发都变白了。

有些动词后面, 可有带宾语补语的宾语也可有不带宾语补语的宾语, 但句子意义颇有不同。比较:

We appointed her our delegate to the convention 我们委派她为我们的代表去参加会议。

We appointed her. 我们委派了她。

They have named their baby Tom. 他们给婴儿起名为汤姆。

They have named their baby. 他们给自己的小孩起了名字。

2) 形容词做主语补语 (主语和其补语构成复合主语)。我们这

里所讲的主语补语是被动句中的主语的补语：

They were found very pleasant. 大家发现他们非常和蔼可亲。

My life has been made worth living. 这使得我的生活有了意义。

还有一类动词,后面与其搭配的形容词作主语的补语,例如:  
break loose, die/marry young, keep/sit still, live close to, remain  
open, ring true/false, 等:

The door remains open. 门仍然开着。

The great musician died young. 伟大的曲作家英年早逝了。

The drama rings true. 这出戏演起来很逼真。

### 3) 补语的位置

如上述,主语补语通常位于主语和动词之后,宾语补语一般位于宾语之后。但当宾语是不定式结构、动名词结构或“that”从句时,通常需让“引导词 it + 宾语补语”紧跟动词,而将真正的宾语置于其后:

We thought it no good telling him about that. 我们认为,告诉他那件事没有好处。

We have made it clear that we'll let you go if you will assume responsibility for it. 我们已经说得很清楚,如果你保证为那件事负责,我们就让你去。

We consider (think) it wrong (foolish) to cheat in examinations.  
(Hornby) 我们认为,考试作弊是错误(愚蠢)的。

不过在惯用的 think(it) fit/good/right/proper to do/that... 和 make(it) clear that... 之类结构中,那引导词 it 多半省略:

I thought good to accept this offer. (RHD) 我认为,接受所提供的这一机会是可取的。

She made (it) clear that we were trespassers. (CGEL) 她明确宣称,我们是入侵者。

The newspaper did not see fit to publish my letter. (ALD) 那家报纸认为, 我的信件不宜发表。

If God sees fit that I should marry, in his due time he will provide me with a worthy husband. (WBD) 如果上帝看来我应该结婚, 那他会在适当时候给我选个当之无愧的丈夫的。

不同于“that 宾语从句 + 宾语补语(前置)”需用 it 引导, “what 宾语从句 + 宾语补语”无需那个 it 而宾语补语不必前置。

I consider what he said unimportant (Hornby) 我认为他所说的无关紧要。

## 1.5 形容词及其短语担任状语

形容词及其短语在句中可以用作状语, 故称之为状语形容词。实际上它是一种缩略了的状语从句。例如:

Ripe, these apples are sweet. 这些苹果熟了的时候是甜的。“Ripe”即 When (they are) ripe 的缩略形式。

Tom had come to him, full of good news. 汤姆到他这里来, 带来了许多好消息。“full of good news” = “who was full of good news.”

状语形容词在句中表示方式、原因、结果等。如:

Stony-faced, the captain ordered to reduce speed. (表方式) 船长板着脸命令减速。

Speechless, Victor Henry nodded and sat in a folding chair. (表方式) 维克多·亨利没有说话, 只是坐在折叠椅上点头。

Unhappy with the result, she returned to work. (表原因) 因为对结果不满意, 她重新另做起来。

Curious, we looked around for other guests. (表原因) 由于好奇, 我们向四面看看还有什么别的客人。

He sat down beside Christina, propping his feet up on the railing, feeling the warmth of the sun against his face, able to relax for the first time in days. (表结果) 他在克里斯蒂娜旁边坐下, 两只脚抬起蹬着栏杆, 温暖的阳光照在脸上, 多少日子以来第一次能放松一下。

Unable to find words to express themselves, they silently grasped our hands. (表伴随状态) 无法用语言来表达自己的感情, 他们默默地抓住我们的手。

这类形容词在句中的位置是灵活的, 有时放在主语之前(部分原因是为了避免意思不明确), 有时放在主语之后(较少见), 有时放在句末。如:

Rather nervous, the man opened the letter. (主语前)

The man, rather nervous, opened the letter. (主语后)

The man opened the letter, rather nervous. (句尾)

区分是定语形容词还是状语形容词有三种方法:

- 1) 定语形容词只修饰某一名词, 而状语形容词表达的意思与非名词性词语或整个句子的内容有关。
- 2) 状语形容词既和主语有关又和谓语有关。
- 3) 状语形容词不同于定语形容词, 它在句中的位置是灵活的。

在某些情况下副词可以代替状语形容词, 而在意义上没有什么变化。如:

Nervous, the man opened the letter. → Nervously, the man opened the letter.

但有时候状语形容词改用相应的副词形式时, 句子意义完全变了。如:



Unhappy, she returned to work. (表示主语 she 的行为方式 = she returned to work, and she was unhappy) 回到工作岗位, 她很不高兴。

Unhappily, she returned to work. (表示说话人对所属情况的态度 = We felt unhappy that she had to return to work) 很遗憾, 她不得不回到原工作岗位。

和形容词一样, 作状语的副词也关系到主语的状态。不过副词描述的是主语所进行的动作的特征或状态。当副词位于句子中间时, 这一点表现得尤为突出。例如:

Please read **carefully** all the sections in the book that deal with adverbs. 请仔细阅读书中讨论副词的所有部分。

状语形容词所修饰的中心词语是主句的主语。如, 在“Rather nervous, the man opened the letter”中, nervous 所修饰的中心词语就是句中的主语 the man。然而, 如果状语形容词短语与主语之间还有其他结构, 那么它所描述的可以是另一个名词(短语), 而不是句中主语。如:

She glanced with disgust at the cat, quiet. 她厌烦地瞥了一眼那只猫, 那只猫一动也不动。该句中 quiet 的逻辑主语不是句中的主语“she”, 而是介词 at 的宾语 cat。又如:

George glared at his daughter, now choleric. 乔治用眼睛瞪着他女儿, 这时他女儿正在生气。

另一类作状语的形容词短语, 句法功能不像非限定性状语从句, 它由从属连词 if, when 等引出, 其意义也由这些连词决定。在句中起表示条件、让步、时间等状语从句的作用。这类状语形容词短语, 一般不可由相应的副词代替。例如:

If busy, call collect 301-547-2136. 如果太忙,就打对方付款的电话 301-547-2136。

The two accidents, though unnecessarily tragic, seemed natural enough. 两个事故本来不该那么惨重,但似乎其发生也很自然。

Whether right or wrong, he always came off worst in an argument because of his inability to speak coherently. 无论对错,他在辩论中总是表现最差,因为他说话没有连贯性。

When enthusiastic, they made good students. 当他们积极努力的时候,都成了好学生。

这类状语形容词前有时可省略从属连词。例如:

(When) Enthusiastic, they are quite cooperative. 热心的时候,他们非常乐于合作。

(While) Parallel with the building of the thermal power stations, provision is made for the construction of hydro-electric stations. 修建热电站的同时,也作了修建水电站的准备。

这类带有从属连词的形容词,其所修饰的中心词语通常都是主句的主语,其位置也比较灵活。例如:

While still young, he wrote his first novel.	} 他写第一部小说 时还很年轻。
He wrote his first novel, while still young.	
He, while still young, wrote his first novel.	

但有时候也会出现其所修饰的中心词语是句中的宾语。如:  
Though very ill, the medicine cured him. 该句的意思很明白,但状语形容词的逻辑主语不是句中的主语“the medicine”,而是句中宾语“him”。在不改变句意的前提下,该句可以改写成: Though very ill, he was cured after taking the medicine. 尽管他病得很厉害,吃了这

种药他就好了。

状语形容词所修饰的中心词语也可以是整个主句。如：

Strange, it was she who initiated divorce proceedings. 很奇怪, 是她起诉离婚的。

Most important, his report offered prospects of a great profit. (比较: What is most important, ...) 他的报告提供了巨大的利润前景, 这非常重要。

Most remarkable still, he is in charge of the project. 更加了不起的是, 他在负责这个项目。

## 1.6 只能作定语的形容词

大多数形容词可兼任定语和表语, 但有下列 4 类形容词只能用作定语, 不能用作表语:

1) 表绝对、极端性质的形容词, 例如:

a true scholar 真正的学者

a real hero 真正的英雄

a definite loss 确切无疑的损失

an outright lie 彻底的谎言

sheer arrogance 十足的傲慢

a mere child 仅仅是个孩子

utter folly 十足的蠢事

the absolute limit 绝对限度

his entire salary 他的全部薪水

total irresponsibility 完全不负责任

上述名词词组中的形容词都不能改作表语用, 例如, 不能说:  
\* His salary is entire. \* A child is mere.

有一些形容词, 如 complete, dear, definite, firm, perfect, plain, pure, simple, true 等等, 既能作定语又可作表语, 但定、表异意。如:

A complete dining room set is ready. 整套餐室用具都已准备就绪。

The work is complete. 工作完成了。

His dear ones died in the hungry year of 1992. 他的亲人都死于饥荒的 1992 年。

Fame and power are very dear to him. (Wood) 名誉和权力对他都非常宝贵。

None of us are perfect. 我们谁都不会十全十美。

You know that I have perfect confidence in you. (Shaw) 你知道我对你信心十足。(Shaw)

有时同一个形容词在某种搭配中既能作定语也能作表语。例如: a complete victory, 也可以说 The victory is complete. 但在另一种搭配中就不能, 例如: a complete stranger 不可说 \* The stranger is complete.

2) 表示独一无二性、限制性的形容词, 例如:

a firm faith 坚定的信仰

a certain winner 确定无疑的赢家

an inner tube (车轮的)内胎

plain nonsense 彻头彻尾的胡说八道

the latter man 后面的那个人

the outer covering 外层覆盖物

in the former case 在上一情况下

his chief excuse 他的主要借口

the exact answer	确切的答案
the only occasion	唯一的场合
the principle objection	主要的反对意见
the same student	同一个学生
the sole argument	唯一的论据
the specific point	特定的那一点
the very man	正是这个人

上述名词词组中作定语的形容词都不能用作表语,例如不能说:

\* The occasion is only.

\* The student is same.

\* The man is very.

另外,有些表示限制性形容词在不同的搭配中表示不同的意思。例如在 a certain person 中的 certain, 相当于 a particular person “某人”, 而在 a certain winner 中, 相当于 a sure winner “确定无疑的赢家”。

表限制性的形容词也有相应的副词, 如:

At that precise moment, her husband walked in. (LDCE) 就在那时她丈夫走了进来。

= Precisely at that moment her husband walked in.

注意: 在 the very man 中 very 作限制性形容词用, 而不作强调性副词用, 比较:

That is the very book I want. (adj.) 那就是我要找的那本书。

This is a very interesting book. (adv.) 这是一本非常有意思的书。

### 3) 某些源自名词的形容词

某些形容词由名词加后缀派生而成, 这些形容词是不可比较的(无比较级和最高级), 它们只能作定语。例如:

an atomic scientist (a scientist specializing in atomic science) 自动化专家

a medical school (a school for students of medicine) 医科学学校

a woolen dress (a dress made of wool) 毛料连衣裙

an electric calculator (a calculator operated by electricity) 电动计算器

a subterranean explorer (an explorer in a subterranean) 地下洞穴勘察者

a billiard room (a room for playing billiards only) 台球室

suburban houses (houses in the suburbs) 郊区房屋

a metallic surface (a surface like that of metal) 金属样(似)的表面

Bolivian ore (ore from Bolivia) 玻利维亚(拉丁美洲国家)矿石

a mortal wound (a wound causing death) 致命伤

以上名词词组中的形容词都不能用作表语, 例如不能说:

\* The scientist is atomic.

\* The school is medical.

### 4) 某些分词形容词

有些形容词如: *bygone*, *beloved*, *coming*, *growing* 等, 分别是过去分词或现在分词转化来的, 这类形容词无比较级, 它们在句中只能作定语。如:

He went to the city in bygone days of long ago. 他很久以前就到那个城市去了。

They lost their beloved son. 他们失去了爱子。

The meeting will be held on the coming Friday. 会议在下周五举行。

This is the growing season for rice. 这是水稻生长的季节。(不能说 \* The season is growing.)

## 1.7 只能作表语的形容词

大多数形容词既可以作定语又可以作表语,而少数形容词只能用作表语,不能用作定语,故可称其为表语形容词。这些形容词多属说明情况(特别是暂时性的情况),而不描绘特性。它们可分为以下四种。

1) 说明健康情况的形容词, well, unwell, ill, faint, fine, poorly 等,例如:

I'm very well, thank you. 我身体很好,谢谢你。

He has been ill for a long time. 他病了好长时间了。

She felt faint. 她觉得头晕。

He is rather poorly this morning. 今天上午他颇感不适。(poorly 兼作副词,意为“贫穷地;拙劣地”,如 a poorly lighted room 光线很暗的房间)

上述形容词中的 ill, faint, fine 只是在表示“健康与否”时作表语,在表示其他多种意义时,能用作定语,例如:

ill temper 坏脾气

ill will 仇恨,存心不良

faint praise 轻描淡写的赞扬

a faint show of resistance 软弱无力装样子的抵抗

fine writing 华而不实的文体

偶见有人把这类形容词用作定语,但不是规范用法。例如:

A well person (a healthy person) needs to see a doctor only for a periodic checkup. (CGEL) 健康的人去看大夫只是为了阶段性检查。

2) 某些以前缀 a- 开头的形容词, 如, ablaze(着火的), aflame(燃烧着), afloat(浮着的), afoot(进行中的), afraid(害怕), agape(目瞪口呆的), aghast(吓呆的), aglow(发亮, 发红), agog(渴望), akimbo(叉着腰的), akin(同族的), alight(烧着的, 点着的), alike(相同的), alive(活着的, 有活力的), alone(单独的), amiss(有差错的), ashamed(羞耻), aslant(倾斜), asleep(睡着), astir(动起来的), awake(醒着的), aware(意识到的), awash(被浪潮冲打的), 等等。

下面是例句:

The wooden house was quickly ablaze. 那座木房子很快就着火了。

You should be ashamed of your behavior. 你应该为你的行为而羞耻。

The sky was aglow with the setting sun. 随着日落天空发红了。

The two brothers are very much alike. 两兄弟长得非常相象。

A few remarks may not be amiss. 稍加评说该无不当。

Although old he is still alive. 他虽年纪大了, 但仍然很有活力。

I was alone in the house. 这个房子里仅有我一人。

The river overflowed till the streets were awash. 河水泛滥, 一直到浪头拍打着街道。

Are you aware of the difficulty? 你意识到这种困难了吗?

我们可以用作定语的形容词来表示相应的意思。如:

The vessel is afloat... — The floating vessel...

船漂浮着... 那漂浮着的船...

The children are afraid... — The frightened children...



孩子们害怕... 受惊的孩子们...

The buildings are alight... — The burning buildings...

那建筑物着火了... 那燃烧着的建筑物...

Everything that is alive... — All living things...

一切生物... 所有的生物...

The children are asleep... — The sleeping children...

孩子们睡着了... 睡着了的孩子们...

When I was awake... — In my waking hours...

当我醒着的时候... 在我醒着的时候...

3) 某些描述人的感觉、心情的形容词 如, content, fond (of), glad, pleased, sorry, upset 等, 一般只能作表语, 例如:

I'm feeling quite content. 我觉得非常满意。

I'm very glad to meet you. 很高兴见到你。

I'm sorry to hear that. 听到那件事我很难过。

He's very fond of ice cream. 他很喜欢吃冰淇淋。

其中的 fond, glad, faint, ill, pleasant, sorry 亦可用作定语, 但意义不同, 也可以不指人:

She has a fond look. 她的样子很慈祥。

Where were you when you received the glad news? 你收到那令人高兴的消息时在什么地方?

She has a pleased look on her face. 她脸上露出了满意的笑容。

The house was in a sorry state. (ALD) 那所房子当时状况很糟糕。

That is a sorry exhibition. (Clark) 那是一次很差劲的展览。

He is in a sorry (sad) plight. 他处在可悲的境地。

She has a faint (= very small) chance. 她成功的可能性很小。

It's an ill wind that blows nobody good. 害于此者利于彼(没有

对人人都有害的坏事。)

4) 还有一些形容词除用在少数固定搭配中外,习惯上只用作表语,如 exempt, far, lit, near, worth, unable, 等。例如:

The candle is lit. 蜡烛亮着。(比较: alighted candle 燃着的蜡烛)

Your hotel is quite near here. It isn't far from here. 你的旅馆离这儿很近,不远。

He is exempt from the examination. 他是位被免试者。(不能说 \* an exempt student)

The worker was unable to finish it in time. 那工人未能按时完成任务。(不能说 \* an unable worker, 但是可以说 an able worker.)

The gentleman is worth visiting. 那位先生值得拜访。(不能说 \* the worth gentleman, 但可以说 the worthy gentleman 那位可敬的先生)但可以说:

a near relative of mine. 我的一个近亲

in the near future 在不久的将来

the far side of the hill 山的那一面

the Far East 远东

## 1.8 作定语和作表语意义相同与不同的形容词

有些形容词作修饰语时,既可作定语(前置),又可作表语,置于名词后(见 1.3),或某些联系动词之后(见 1.7),意义没有什么区别。有以下两种情况:

1) 当某些以 -able 或 -ible 结尾的词作修饰语时,如:

the visible stars }  
the stars visible } 看得见的星星

navigable rivers } 可通航河流  
rivers navigable }

We need suitable actors. 我们需要合适的演员。

The actors look suitable. 这些演员看上去合适。

上述形容词与形容词最高级及 only, every 等词搭配时, 如:

the finest obtainable cloth } 可买得到的最好布料  
the finest cloth obtainable }

the only navigable river } 可通航的唯一河流  
the only river navigable }

every available fire engine } 每辆可用的救火车  
every fire engine available }

the only passable road } 唯一通行的路  
the only road passable }

2) 当 involved, concerned, interested 与 party, problem, item 等名词搭配作“有关”解时, 例如:

the involved / the concerned / the interested parties } 有关当  
the parties involved / concerned / interested } 事人

但有些形容词作定语和作表语意义有所不同, 如: visible, concerned, elect, involved, present, proper, responsible, above, square, 等:

Venus is a clearly visible (which can be seen) star. (visible 前置, 表示永久性)金星是颗看得很清楚的恒星。

It is the only star visible now. (which can be seen now) (visible 后置表示暂时性)它是现在唯一能看得见的恒星。

The concerned (worried) doctor rang for an ambulance. 焦虑的医生打了个电话叫救护车。

The doctor concerned (responsible) is on holiday. 主管医生在休假。

This elect (specially chosen) body meets once a year. 推选出的机构每年举行一次会议。

The president elect (who has been elected) took over in May. 当选主席已于五月份接任。

Present (currently employed) employees number 3,000. 现有职工达三千人。

Employees present (here now) should vote on the issue. 出席会议的职工应对这一问题进行表决。

还有一些形容词作定语和作表语时,意义截然不同。如:

He is the conscious patient (the one awake). 他就是那个神志清醒的病人。

He is conscious(aware) of his faults. 他知道他的错误。

It was a very involved (complicated) explanation. 这是一项很繁琐的说明。

The boy involved (connected with this) has left. 牵扯此事的男孩已离去。

It is a proper (correct) question. 这是一个恰当的问题。

The question proper (itself) has not been answered. 问题本身没有得到回答。

Susan is a responsible girl (a girl who has a sense of duty). 苏珊是一个有责任心的姑娘。

The girl responsible (blamed) was expelled. 为此负责的姑娘被开除了。

the above powers (mentioned earlier). 前面提到的那些强国

the Powers above (providence) 天上的众神

Peter is a heavy (of unusual amount) smoker. 彼德是个烟瘾极大的人。

A faint (not intense in color) blush crept into her cheeks. 她的脸颊微微泛出红晕。

faint 不指“健康”状态时,可以用作定语,又如:a faint hope 微弱的希望, a faint sound 微弱的声音。

glad 作前置定语主要用在某些短语中表示事物性质,而不用于人,例如:

Mrs. Owens put on her glad rags (= evening dress) for the party.  
欧文斯夫人盛装赴会。

She has brought us some glad tidings (news). 她给我们带来了一些好消息。

当 glad 用作表语时总是表示人对某事物感到高兴,如:

I am very glad to hear you can come. 我很高兴听说你能来。  
(但不能说 \* This news is very glad.)

ill 任前置定语,意为 bad 或 evil,但当 ill 用作表语时,多表示身体不好,其意义为 unwell / in bad health。例如:...

ill luck 恶运

ill temper 坏脾气

The man is very ill. 那个人病得厉害。

He's mentally ill. 他有精神病。

She looks ill these days. 近来她的气色不好。

Jim's seriously ill with TB. 吉姆患严重的结核病。

sorry 用作前置定语,意为 sad 或 wretched 等,但它最常用作表

语, 意义为 regretful; fond 作前置定语也不表最常见意义“喜欢”。  
如:

It was a sorry (wretched) sight. 那景象很惨。

He is in a sorry (sad) plight. 他处在可悲的境地。

I'm sorry to say (that) the work was not well done. 很遗憾这件  
工作没有做好。

I'm sorry for giving you so much trouble. 对不起, 给你添了许多  
麻烦。

A fond mother may spoil her child. (LDCE) 溺爱孩子(过于痴  
情)的母亲会把孩子惯坏。

She had fond hopes of becoming a movie star. (FWF) 当时她还  
抱着成为电影明星的如意梦想。

还有一些定语、表语异义的形容词用法, 见前 1.6 和 1.7。

## Exercise 1

I. 说明下面文字中标序号的形容词或者和形容词同形的词在句中  
担任的成分:

All memorable(1) events, I should say, transpire(发出, 发生) in  
morning time and in a morning atmosphere. 可以说, 所有值得  
纪念的事件都发生在清晨时光与清晨的氛围中。

The Vedas(印度婆罗门教《吠陀经》) say, "All intelligence awake  
(2) with the morning." 《吠陀经》写道: "一切智慧随着晨光醒  
来。"

Poetry and art, and the fairest(3) and most memorable(4) of the  
actions of men, date from such an hour. 诗歌与艺术、人类最美  
好最宝贵的行为都源于这一时刻。

All poets and heroes, like Memnon(希腊神话中的埃塞俄比亚国王、特洛伊之战的英雄“门农”), are the children of Aurora(罗马神话中的曙光女神“奥罗拉”), and emit(播出) their music at sunrise. 所有的诗人与英雄, 例如门农, 都是曙光之神的孩子们, 都在日出时传播他们的乐曲。

To him whose elastic(5)(弹性的, 灵敏的), and vigorous(6) thought keeps pace with the sun, the day is a perpetual(7) morning. 其灵敏自如、生气勃勃的思想与太阳同步活动的人, 对于他, 整个一天全是永远的清晨。

It matters not what the clocks say or the attitudes and labors of men. 问题不在于时钟指向何时或人们持何态度、如何劳动。

Morning is when I am awake(8) and there is a dawn in me. 清晨我醒来、心中辉耀着黎明的时光。

Moral(9) reform is the effort to throw off sleep. 要修养德性就是要努力摆脱沉睡。

Why is it that men give so poor(10) an account of their day if they have not been slumbering? 如果人们不曾昏睡不醒, 为什么他们对自己所过的日子交代得那么糊涂呢?

They are not such poor(11) calculators. 他们并非拙于算计。

If they had not been overcome with drowsiness(困倦) they would have performed something. 假如他们不曾被睡意压倒, 他们本来是会有所成就的。

The millions are awake(12) enough for physical(13) labor; but only one in a million is awake enough for effective(14) intellectual(15) exertion(努力), only one in a hundred millions to a poetic(16) or divine(17) life. 万千群众清醒过来, 可以干体力活儿了; 但百万人中只有一个是清醒到能够从事有效的智力劳动, 亿万人中只有一个是清醒到能够开创诗意或圣洁的

人生。

To be awake(18) is to be alive(19). 清醒便是生活。

I have never yet met a man who was quite awake(20). 我还没有碰到一个完全清醒的人。

How could I have looked him in the face? 我怎样才能不致愧对这样一个人呢? (H. Thoreau, *Walden, Life in the Woods*)

II. 说明下面文字中标有序号的形容词(及其短语)或者和形容词同形的词在句中担任的成分, 并把定语和后位定语区别开来:

A brilliant(1) November morning with a sky of diamond blue(2) above the bay.

And the red(3) flowers of a long(4) summer still glowing darkly on the Rock.

The intense(5) blackness of the lampless(6) night had rolled away to reveal, on the northern(7) horizon, the country we had come to seek.

It crouched(蹲着) before us in a great(8) ring(一大圈) of lion-colored(9) mountains, raw(粗糙不平的), sleeping(犹在睡梦中的), and savage(蛮荒的, 10).

There were the scarred(多瘢痕的) and crumpled(多皱纹的, 起褶的, 11) valleys.

The sharp(12) peaks wreathed(纠结) in their dusty(13) fires(火焰, 指土红色的峰巅).

And below them the white(14) towns piled high(15) on their little (16) hills and the empty(17) roads running crimson(18) along the faces of the cliffs.

Already, across the water, one heard or fancied one heard the sobbing(抽泣般的叫声) of asses, the cries and salty(尖利的,



19) voices cutting through the thin golden(20) air.

And from a steep (21) hillside rose a column of smoke, cool as marble(22), pungent(肃穆的) as pine(23), which hung like a signal over the landscape, obscure, imperative(威严的) and motionless(24). (Laurie Lee, *A Rose for Winter, Arriving in Spain*)

III. 说明下面文字中标有序号的形容词在句中担任的成分:

How was it possible(1), I asked myself, to walk for an hour through the woods and see nothing worthy(2) of note?

I who cannot see find hundreds of things to interest me through mere(3) touch.

I feel the delicate(4) symmetry of a leaf.

I pass my hands lovingly about the smooth(5) skin of a slender birch, or the rough(6) shaggy(起毛刺的 7) bark of a pine.

In spring I touch the branches of trees hopefully in search of a bud, the first sign of awakening(8) Nature after her winter's sleep.

I feel the delightful(9), velvety(10) texture of a flower, and discover its remarkable(11) convolutions(盘旋); and something of the miracle of Nature is revealed to me.

Occasionally, if I am very fortunate(12), I place my hand gently on a small(13) tree and feel the happy(14) quiver of a bird in full(15) song.

I am delighted(16) to have the cool(17) waters of a brook rush through my open(18) fingers.

To me a lush(19) carpet of pine needles or spongy(20) grass is more welcome(21) than the most luxurious(22) Persian(23) rug.

To me the pageant of seasons is a thrilling(24) and unending(25) drama, the action of which streams through my finger tips.  
(Helen Keller, *Three Days to See*)

IV. 选用适当的形容词填空 (例如 active, anxious, brave, courageous, dark, drowning, excellent, exciting, fascinating, gentle, good, good-looking, hysterical, interesting, long, loose, noisy, old, quiet, tall, uproaring, wooden, worried 等):

1. It was very \_\_\_\_\_ of him to dive into the mining-pool to rescue the \_\_\_\_\_ child.
2. We have always found her to be a \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ person.
3. There was an \_\_\_\_\_ program on television last night.
4. She is \_\_\_\_\_ about her younger son because he still hasn't returned from school.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ door creaked loudly as he pushed it open.
6. She is not as \_\_\_\_\_ as both her older sisters.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ woman was quickly led away from the \_\_\_\_\_ room and taken to the garden where she calmed down.
8. He is the most \_\_\_\_\_ character that I have ever heard or seen.
9. He made his shirt \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The stranger, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, attracted the attention of the people at the party.

## 第二章 形容词按意义分类

### 2.1 性质、状态形容词

性质形容词指人或事物所具有内在的本性、特点,如: clever, dry, fat, good, healthy, heavy, kind, poor, square, young 等等。

状态形容词指人或事物表现出来的形态与所处的状态。状态形容词可分为静态和动态两种。静态形容词如: high, tall, white, straight; 动态形容词如: calm, cheerful, rude, sensible, shy, slow, stupid, talkative, thoughtful, troublesome, 等等。

静态形容词和动态形容词在许多方面是不同的。例如,像 tall 这样的静态形容词不能用于动词的进行时态句或祈使句中。例如不能说, She is being tall. 或 Be tall, 但像 brave 或 rude 这样的动态形容词可与动词的进行时态或祈使语气连用。例如:

She is being brave. 她这阵子表现很勇敢(或属做做样子)。

Don't be (so) rude. 不要(如此)无礼。

Be brave. 勇敢些。

性质、状态形容词一般位于所修饰的名词之前:

a big shop 一家大商店

a blue car 一辆蓝色的小汽车

an interesting book 一本有趣的书

如果一个名词之前有两个以上的形容词,表示各方面的属性不用 and 连接。例如:

a tall young man 一个高个子年轻人

six yellow roses 六朵黄玫瑰花

boundless creative power 无限的创造力

certain rich American producers 某些富有的美国生产商

an advanced, strong, prosperous, new Africa 一个先进、强大、繁荣的新非洲

a charming little blue silk scarf 一条可爱的蓝色丝绸小围巾

但表同一方面属性的两个以上并列形容词,如都是表颜色的,要用 and 或 but, or 等连词连接:

a black and brown cap 一顶黑白相间的帽子

a red, yellow and white flag 红黄白三色旗

slow but sure 虽缓慢但稳当

He no longer felt despondent, but happy, elated, hopeful. (Cronin)

他再也不觉得沮丧,而是幸福、高兴、充满希望。

The fox may grow gray, but never good. (谚语)狐狸会变老,但永远不修好。(狐狸活到老,永远不学好)

Is it green or blue? 它是绿色的还是蓝色的?

The sea can be blue or green or gray. 海洋可能是蓝色的,或绿色的,或者是灰色的。

如果性质、状态形容词后面用代词 one(单数)或 ones(复数),就可以不再重复形容词所修饰的名词,这一形式主要用以表示选择或比较。例如:

I like those pencils and I'll take a blue one. 我喜欢那些铅笔。我要一支蓝色的。

Small apples are often better than big ones. 小苹果往往比大苹果更好。

I caught nine big ones. 我捕捉到九只大的。

## 2.2 关系形容词

从意义上讲,关系形容词不同于质、态形容词(见 2.1)。关系形容词不是表示人或物的性质、状态,而是表示人或物与其他人或事物之间的种种关系,如质地关系,产地关系,属性关系,方位关系等,这些都是不可比较的:

1) 方位关系形容词表示它所修饰名词的方位、渊源或去向等等,如:

northern climate 北方的气候

the eastern countries 东方国家

southeast wind 来自东南的风

an eastern window 朝东的窗户

western science and technology 西方(国家)的科学技术

the Eastern Hemisphere 东半球

2) 质地关系形容词表示所修饰名词的某种材料或结构,无比较级和最高级,多用作前置定语,如:

wooden stool 木制凳子

waxen image 蜡像

an golden eagle 金鹰

3) 产地关系形容词表示所修饰名词所指人或事物的所在地或出产地,例如:

American athletes 美国运动员

Chinese artists 中国艺术家

ancient Olympic Games 古希腊奥林匹克竞技会

Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会

4) 属性关系形容词表示所修饰名词的归属关系,不可比较,例如:

the Victorian era (英国女王)维多利亚时代

Shakespearean plays 莎士比亚的戏剧

tropical plants 热带植物

### 2.3 绝对性状形容词与相对可比形容词

绝对性状形容词把所修饰名词所指事物的性质和状态限制在唯一的、或特定的范围内,多前置。例如:

the absolute limit 绝对限度

a complete stranger 素不相识的人

his entire salary 他的全部工资

a perfect table-tennis player 技艺极高的乒乓球运动员

a true scholar 真正的学者

a real hero 名副其实的英雄

a certain person 某人

his chief excuse 他的主要借口

the principal point 主要之点

the exact answer 确切的答案

the main reason 主要原因

the only occasion 唯一场合

the sole heir 唯一继承人

相对可比形容词所属性质可以在两者之间或三者以上多者之间进行比较。如果比较的意思在于“…和…(不)一样…”,可用“as (not)...as...”这个结构来表示。这叫“原级比较”(详见 7.5, 2)。二者之间的比较又有时意味着“比…更…一些”这类概念,通常用一个由连词 than 引起的状语从句来表示和什么相比,称为“比较级比较”,(详见 7.5, 3)。三者或三者以上多者之间的要表示“最…的”的意思,这时要用 the...in/of 这一最高级结构。(详见 7.5, 2 的数字)

## 2.4 表示国籍、民族、地区的形容词

这类形容词大多由它们各自的名词加后缀派生而成。这些后缀主要有 -ese, -i, -(a)n, -(i)sh, 等。下面是部分表示国籍、民族、地区的形容词:

### 1) -(a)n

Afghan	阿富汗的
African	非洲的
Albanian	阿尔巴尼亚的
Algerian	阿尔及利亚的
American	美国的
Antiguan	安提瓜岛(拉丁美洲岛国安提瓜和巴布达的主岛)的
Argentine	阿根廷的
Asian	亚洲的
Australian	澳大利亚的
Bahamian	巴哈马(群岛)(拉丁美洲国家)的
Barbadian	巴巴多斯(岛)(拉丁美洲国家)的
Belgian	比利时的

Belizean	伯利兹(拉丁美洲国家)的
Brazilian	巴西的
Bruneian	文莱的
Bulgarian	保加利亚的
Burundian	布隆迪(东非国家)的
Cambodian	柬埔寨的
Camerounian	喀麦隆(西非国家)的
Canadian	加拿大的
Chilean	智利的
Cuban	古巴的
Dominican	多米尼加(拉丁美洲国家)的
Egyptian	埃及的
Fijian	斐济的
Gambian	冈比亚(西非国家)的
Grenadian	格林纳达岛的
Guinean	几内亚的
Haitian	海地(拉丁美洲国家)的
Indian	印度的
Italian	意大利的
Jordanian	约旦的
Korean	朝鲜的
Kenyan	肯尼亚的
Liberian	利比里亚的
Libyan	利比亚的
Madagascan	马达加斯加(非洲岛国)的
Malawian	马拉维(非洲东南部国家)的
Mauritanian	毛里塔尼亚的
Mauritian	毛里求斯的



Mexican	墨西哥的
Monacan	摩纳哥(欧洲西南部国家)的
Moroccan	摩洛哥(北非国家)的
Mozambican	莫桑比克的
Nauruan	瑙鲁(西太平洋岛国)的
Nicaraguan	尼加拉瓜的
Nigerian	尼日利亚的
Norwegian	挪威的
Peruvian	秘鲁的
Rwandan	卢旺达的
Salvadoran	萨尔瓦多的
Singaporean	新加坡的
Somalian	索马里的
Syrian	叙利亚的
Tanzanian	坦桑尼亚的
Tobagonian	多巴哥岛(拉丁美洲)的
Trinidadian	特立尼达岛(拉丁美洲)的
Tunisian	突尼斯的
Ugandan	乌干达的
Uruguayan	乌拉圭的
Yugoslavian	南斯拉夫的

2) -ese

Bhutanese	不丹的
Burmese	缅甸的
Chinese	中国的
East Timorese	东帝汶的
Gabonese	加蓬的

Guyanese	圭亚那的
Japanese	日本的
Lebanese	黎巴嫩的
Maltese	马耳他的
Nepalese	尼泊尔的
Portuguese	葡萄牙的
San Marinense	圣马力诺(南欧国家)的
Senegalese	塞内加尔(西非国家)的
Sikkimese	锡金(南亚国家)的
Sudanese	苏丹的
Surinamese	苏里南(南美洲北部国家)的

### 3) -i

Bangladeshi	孟加拉国的
Iraqi	伊拉克的
Israeli	以色列的
Pakistani	巴基斯坦的
Saudi	沙特阿拉伯的
Yemeni	也门的

### 4) -ish

British	(大)不列颠的(英国的)
Danish	丹麦的
English	英格兰的(英国的)
Finnish	芬兰的
Irish	爱尔兰的
Polish	波兰的
Scottish	苏格兰的

Spanish 西班牙的

Swedish 瑞典的

但有些表示国籍、民族、地区形容词的构成不遵循上述规则,而是改变原名词词干或加其他词尾而成。例如:

Dane 丹麦 → Denmark 丹麦的

France 法国 → French 法国的

Germany 德国 ← German 德国的

Greece 希腊 ← Greek 希腊的

Switzerland 瑞士 ← Swiss 瑞士的

Thailand 泰国 ← Thai 泰国的

Turk 土耳其 → Turkish 土耳其的

也有少数表示国籍、民族、地区的形容词的构成和其相应名词的形式大相径庭:

Netherlands → Dutch 荷兰的

Upper Volta → Voltaic 上沃尔特的

还有个别的表示国籍、民族、地区的形容词和其名词同形:

Vatican (梵蒂冈) → Vatican (梵蒂冈的)

## 2.5 不同意义的-ic/-ical/gold/golden 等

形容词从意义上分类,可以分成本义(即原义)形容词(inherent adjective)和转义(即喻义)形容词(noninherent adjective)。

本义(即原义)形容词是指那些用于直接描述名词所表示事物

本质的词。如, a wooden bowl, 意思是 a bowl which is made of wood (用木头制成的碗)木碗, 这是本义形容词 wooden 直接说明用木头制成的碗这个物体的质地。

但其中-y/-en 形式形容词也可表示转义, 经关联比较表示性质: a silky voice 圆润的噪音, a wooden head 榆木脑瓜。而-ic 形式形容词多表本义; -ical 形式形容词多表转义:

atom	→	atomic	(原子 → 原子的)
wood	→	wooden	(木头 → 木制的; 僵硬的)
gold	→	golden	(金子 → 金的; 宝贵的)
silk	→	silky	(丝绸 → 丝绸的)
lead	→	leaden	(铅 → 铅制的; 阴沉的)
stone	→	stony	(石头 → 石质的; 冷酷的)
medicine	→	medical	(医学 → 医学的)
class	→	classic	典范的, 古典的
	→	classical	古典文艺的
economy	→	economic	经济(学)的
	→	economical	节约的, 经济(省钱)的
electricity	→	electric	发电/用电/导电的
	→	electrical	有关电(学)的
history	→	historic	历史(意义)的
	→	historical	历史上的, 属史实的

这里本义形容词没有比较级和最高级形式, 也不能用 more, very 等词来修饰。例如: a wooden spoon (一把木制的调羹), 不能说 \* a more wooden spoon, 也不能说 \* a very wooden spoon。但表转义时, 可以说 a more wooden performance 更为僵硬的表演, one of the most wooden actresses (NODE) 最呆板的女演员之一。

转义形容词不能直接描述名词所指的事物本身, 用转义形容词

修饰名词可以看作是名词意义的关联引申,常表示“…般的”,“…样的”,“像…样的”。因此, a firm friend 意思是 a friend whose friendship is firm 可靠的朋友。又如, a perfect stranger 意思是 a stranger who is perfectly strange 素不相识的人。

是否由加后缀构成的形容词都能既表本义,又表转义:

本义		转义	
a gold(en) watch	金表	a golden sunset	金色的落日
a firm handshake	有力的握手	a firm friend	可靠的朋友
a stony beach	多石海滩	a stony silence	死一般寂静
a true report	真正的报告	a true scholar	真正的学者
a wood(en) chair	木椅	a wooden stare	呆滞的凝望

(金表更常说 gold watch, 金牌一般说 gold medal)

## 2.6 褒义与贬义形容词及褒贬词义的演变

1) 褒义形容词 (commendatory adjectives) 是指那些表示赞许 (praising) 意义的形容词, 例如:

acceptable 令人满意的, 可接受的

affable (人)和藹可亲的, 融洽的, 容易亲近的

attractive 吸引人的

beautiful 漂亮的

brave 勇敢的

energetic 精力充沛的

faithful 忠实的, 诚实的

fascinating 迷人的, 极美的

fine 美好的, 精制的

friendly 友好的

grateful 感激的, 感谢的

humorous 幽默的

innocent 无辜的,清白的,纯真的;老实的

kind 善良的,好意的

sweet 甜蜜的

Her gestures are so sweet. 她的姿态(举止)真招人喜爱。

He is affable to everybody. 他对任何人都抱着和蔼谦恭的态度。

2) 贬义形容词 (derogatory adjectives) 是指那些表贬斥 (demoting) 意义的形容词, 例如:

abhorrent 令人讨厌的, 讨厌的

aggressive 侵略性的, 气势逼人的

arbitrary 独断的

awful 可怕的, 吓人的

bad 坏的, 严重的, 拙劣的

fussy 易于大惊小怪的; 挑剔的, 过于讲究的

monotonous 单调的

Negro 黑人的, 黑种的(指人或动物)(比较: black)

offensive 不愉快的, 讨厌的, 没礼貌的; 攻击的

pitiful 可怜的; 可鄙的

scandalous 丑恶可耻的, 诽谤性的

You are getting as fussy as she. 你变得像她一样易于大惊小怪的。

He is very fussy about his personal appearance. 他过于讲究自己的外表。

3) 可褒可贬的形容词

英语中这类形容词既可用于表示赞许, 又可用于表示贬斥, 有时

表示非褒非贬(见下 4)。

例如:

slender(纤细的,苗条的;很小/少的,渺茫的)。

再看下面的句子:

The girl is pretty and slender. 这女孩既漂亮又苗条。

Your chance of winning is slender. 你取胜的机会渺茫。

He can't afford a car on his slender income. (Chambers) 靠他的可怜的收入他买不起汽车。

A pencil is a slender piece of wood. (非褒非贬) 铅笔是一根细木条。

这类形容词在英语中的数量很多,又如:

	褒	贬
funny	有趣的,滑稽的	奇怪的,滑稽的
plump	丰满的	肥胖的(= fat)
sensitive	敏感的	神经过敏的
naive	朴实的	无知的
stubborn	顽强的	顽固的
fond	深情的	痴心的

#### 4) 非褒非贬形容词(也可以称为中性形容词)

这类形容词是那些由物质名词或抽象名词转变而成的形容词,也就是说,这里形容词都有自己的同根名词。例如:

atomic	←	atom
electrical	←	electricity
waxen	←	wax
wooden	←	wood
golden	←	gold

还有 appositive, arithmetic, Catholic, chronic, cohesive,

collective, continuous, decisive, hungry, thirsty, 等等。

### 5) 褒、贬形容词词义的演变

和名词、动词等词类一样,英语中的不少形容词在使用过程中表示的意义可以从褒义演变成贬义,也可以从贬义演变成褒义。

如 nice, 几个世纪以来, nice 以非凡的方式改变其意义。其最初意义为: silly(愚昧的), 后演变为: difficult to please(难对付的), 例如: a nice appreciation of piano music (RWRT) 钢琴曲之难以鉴赏。又演变为 sensitively critical, 或 subtle(微妙的), 例如: a nice distinction 难以辨认的区别。又如: How far this relates to a Tory concept of ideal society is a nice point. (RWRT) 这种想法与保守党的理想社会观有多么不同是一个微妙的观点。一直到现在, 其意义演变为“可爱的, 可亲的, 好吃的”, 例如: A nice egg, a nice piece of toast with nice marmalade, and a nice cup of tea can contribute to a nice breakfast. (RWRT) 一个好吃的鸡蛋, 一块好吃的涂有优质果酱的面包和一杯好茶都有助于组成一顿美好的早餐。

又如: smart, 最初是贬义词, 表示:(痛楚等)强烈的, 厉害的, 如针刺的, 例如: smart pain 巨痛。后转指: 激烈的, 严厉的, 例如: a smart punishment 严厉的惩罚。又转指: 滑头的, 例如: Don't get smart with me. 不要和我耍滑头。再转变为:(动作)灵活的, 灵敏的, (步伐)快速的; 急剧(上涨等)的, 例如: They walked at a smart pace. 他们快速步行。又如: a smart rise in prices 物价的急剧上涨。还转为:(指人)聪明的, 伶俐的, 例如: It's easy to teach smart students. 教聪明学生容易。以至又转为: 漂亮的, 穿着整洁的, 时髦的, 例如: Chris was looking very smart in his new gray suit. (LDCE) (95 版) 克里斯穿着那套灰色的新制服看上去非常漂亮; one of Bonn's smartest restaurants 波恩最时髦的餐厅之一; Why don't you try to make yourself look smarter? 你为何不把外表弄得更帅气一些?



## 6)反语形容词

反语是修辞学上的辞格之一。反语是指那些用与本意相反的话语来表达本义,即说反话,常用于嘲弄讽刺。汉语中也有这种用法。高鹗续写的《红楼梦》第90回,那边长辈们在安排如神的宝玉和宝钗举行婚礼,这边黛玉怀恨临终叫到:“宝玉,宝玉!你好…”,这“好”字就属反语。如果说“你好多情呀!”还是反语;但如说“你好狠心呀!”本意就分明了。例如:

“That’s really lovely, that is!” he said with heavy irony. 他极为讽刺地说:“那太好了,太好了。”(OAL)

“You are very kind to me.” She said with irony. 她讽刺地说:“你对我真好。”

“This is beautiful weather.” (In fact it is bad.) “天气真好。”(事实上天气不好。)

The boy called the very thin boy “fatty”. 那个男孩嘲弄地称那位很瘦的男孩“胖子”。

That’s nice language coming from a Christian! 那就是一个基督教徒说出的好话!

A fine expression of gratitude! (RHEJ) 好一种感激的表示!(就这么表示感激!)

It would be a fine thing indeed not knowing what time it was in the morning. 要是早晨不知道是什么时间那才妙呢。(早上不知道时间,上班迟到,会被开除的。心想“那就糟了”,却说成“那才妙呢”, a fine thing 的真正意思是 a bad thing。)

## 2.7 委婉用语、诗文用语中的形容词

### 1) 委婉用语(euphemism)中的形容词

委婉用语是修辞学上的辞格之一。不直说本意,而用委婉含蓄

的话来暗示。英语中委婉形容词也常见。如：

一般用词	委婉用词
poor	underdeveloped / underprivileged / needy
fat	corpulent / overweight
old	senior / elder
old men	seasoned men; well-preserved men
black	colored(用有色人种, 尤指黑人)

2) 英语诗歌及其他文学作品中的形容词常与一般形容词同义而不同形。下面是英语诗文中常用的形容词：

一般用词	诗文用词	
lonely	lone	寂寞的
dreary	drear	凄凉的, 冷冷清清的
dreadful	dread	可怕的, 令人恐惧的
weary	awearry	疲乏的
lovely	lovesome	可爱的
brave	dauntless	勇敢的
yonder	yon	那边的
delighted	rapt	快乐的
holy	hallowed	神圣的
sorrowful	doleful	悲哀的
innocent	artless	天真的
unlucky	hapless	不幸的
low/humble	lowly	低下的, 卑贱的
still	stilly	寂静的
distressed	forlorn	苦恼的
retired	sequestered	退休的, 隐退的
unhappy	joyless	不快乐的

merry	jocund	快乐的
careless	reckless	鲁莽的
unprofitable	bootless	无益的
ungrateful	ingrate	忘恩的
unfaithful	recreant	不忠的
silent	mute	沉默的
dark	darksome	黑暗的
foolish	fond	傻的/痴的
angry	wrathful	发怒的
dreadful	dire	可怕的

为什么英语诗文中用那么多与一般形容词同义而不同形的形容词呢？诗文用词有些是一般用词的古旧形式，或相应旧词，可带来一些高雅韵味；有些比一般用词含有更强的语气；也有些与一般词意义完全相同，但音节数与重音所在不同，可借以构成诗歌节律。

## 2.8 形容词与属性代词的区别

### 1) 属性代词的类别：

属性代词(adjectival pron.), 这里指的是那些在句中既可充当形容词性成分, 大多数又可充当名词性成分的代词。这类属性代词包括：

- i . 指示代词: this, that, 等
- ii . 物主代词: my, your, 等
- iii . 不定代词: some, any, one, another, 等
- iv . 概括代词: all, either, both, each, 等
- v . 指量代词: many, much, few, little, 等
- vi . 相互代词: each other, one another, 等

vii. 强调代词: own

viii. 否定代词: no, neither

## 2) 属性代词的句法功能

除 every, no (≠not any) “没有一个”只能作定语外,其他属性代词在句中既能相当于名词作主语、宾语、表语,又能相当于形容词作定语:

### i. 指示代词:

**This** watch is mine. 这手表是我的。

A friend of mine sent me some pictures of Athens **this** morning.

今天上午我朋友送给我一些阿塞恩的照片。

Who is **that** in the garden? 公园里那是谁?

**These** last few days I have been working particularly hard. 近几天我工作得一直特别努力。

Are **these** interesting? 这些有意思吗?

**Those** buildings were built in the 19th century. 那些建筑物是十九世纪建造的。

Whose shoes are **those**? 那些是谁的鞋?

应当注意:指示代词的远指和近指与前指和后指的用法。this (these)指近的事物和最近过去与将来,that (those)指远的事物和较远过去。

指空间的远近:

**This** is my pen and **that** is yours. 这是我的笔,那是你的。

How do you like **those**? 你喜欢那些吗?

指时间的前后:

**That** bright April afternoon of 1920 she took a lot of pictures. 在

1920 年的那个晴朗的四月下午,她拍了许多照片。

We saw him **this** morning.

I'll come to see you one of **these** days. 过几天我来看你。(one of these 指未来)

指叙述事物的前后, that 指前, this 指后:

I hear you disliked his latest novel. I read his first novel, and **that** was boring, too. (CGEL) 我听说你不喜欢他的最新小说。我看过他的第一部小说,那也无聊。

He asked for his brown raincoat, insisting that **this** was his usual coat during the winter months. (CGEL)(近指转用于前指)他要他的褐色雨衣,而且坚持这是他冬天里常穿的一件。

He told the story like **this**: "Once upon a time. . . ." (近指转用于后指)他是这样讲故事的:"从前..."

**That/This** is the only party I've ever really enjoyed in my life. (Swan) (该 party 当中或刚完,说 this;该 party 过后,说 that)这是我一生唯一真正喜欢的聚会。

Written on the placard are **these** words: We want peace. 牌子上写着这样一些字:我们要和平。

从上述例句也可大体看出:近指指示代词 this 和 these 兼有前指和后指两种功能,而远指指示代词 that 和 those 只具有(较远)前指的可能。

## ii. 不定代词:

可代替任何特定名词或形容词的代词叫不定代词。不定代词表示各种程度和各种类型的不定意义。它们可以含数量意义,表示整体和局部数量。

**some** 的用法:

**some** 既可指人, 亦可指物。它可以表示不定数量, 修饰可数名词复数或不可数名词, 意为: “几个”, “一些”; 它也可以和可数名词单数连用, 意为: “某个”, 多用于肯定句, 有时也用于疑问句, 这时它含有肯定意向, 实为请求或反问, 和数词连用, 意为“大约”, 和表示距离等的名词连用, 意为“相当量的”。这 5 种意义可分述如下:

相当大(长、多)不定量或不定复数:

**Some** rolls have been eaten. 吃了些蛋糕卷。

**Some** bread has been eaten. 吃了些面包。

**Some** (of the rolls) have been eaten. 吃了其中一些蛋糕卷。

**Some** (of the bread) has been eaten. 吃了其中一些面包。

**Some** of the loaf has been eaten. 吃了大块面包的一部分。

单数“某个”:

**Some** day I'll tell you a great secret. 某天我会告诉你一个机密。

He's living at **some** place in New York. 他住在纽约的某个地方。

用于疑问, 否定句, 有肯定意向:

Could you lend me **some** money? (请求) 你能借给我些钱吗?

Will you get me **some** matches? 你能给我些火柴吗?

Aren't there **some** stamps in the drawer? (反问) 难道抽屉里没有些邮票吗?

与数词连用, 表“大约...”:

It happened **some** twenty years ago. 这事发生在大约 20 年前。

**Some** 86 per cent of the peasants are landless. (Foster) (当副词用) 大约 86% 的农民没有土地。

与抽象名词连用,表“相当量的”:

The railway station is **some** distance from the village. 火车站离那个村子很远。

I had **some** trouble over it, I remember. (Palmer) 我记得对于那件事我遇到过很大的麻烦。

**any** 的用法:

用于疑问句与否定句或非肯定性质的从句:

Haven't you **any** work to do? 你没有工作吗?

Are there **any** books on the desk? 课桌上有书吗?

Is there **any**? (Palmer) 有一个(些)吗?

He never had **any** luck. 他从来都不走运。

He went away without saying good-bye to **any** of us. 他没有跟我们任何人告别就离开了。

There are not **any** books. 没有书。

I don't think **any** of us ought to wish the results to be different.  
我认为我们中不会有人希望有不同的结果。

Let me know if you hear **any** news. (非肯定性的条件从句) 如果你听到什么消息就告诉我。

If you have **any** news, call me up right away. (非肯定性的条件从句) 如果你有什么消息,立刻打电话给我。

用于肯定句:

**Any** color (pen) will do. 任何颜色(笔)都行。

**one** 的用法:

由数词转来的不定代词 **one** 具有形容词和名词的性质,在句中作主语、宾语、定语等。

形容词性质,句中作定语,意为“一(个、天、次等)”:

**One** flower makes no garden. 独木不成林。

**One** morning, he was called from class to the office of the head master. 一天上午,他被从教室叫到校长办公室。(指过去时间)

Come again **one** day soon. (LDCE) 过几天再来一次。(指将来时间)

名词性质,句中作主语、宾语等,意为“人们”、“一个人”、“任何人”等:

There are three kings and **one** was black. (LDCE) 有三个国王,一个是黑人。

It's all for **one** and **one** for all. (Wood) 人人为我,我为人人。

**One** can't be too careful in matters like this. (泛指)在这种问题上一个人多么小心都不为过。

**all** 的用法:

all 具有形容词和名词性质,指三个以上的人或物:

**All** are welcome. 大家都受欢迎。(主语)

It is hard to pass **all**. 众口难调。(宾语)

**All** the angles of a rectangle are 90°. 长方形的每个角都是 90 度。(定语)

**each** 的用法:

个体代词 each 既可指人,也可指物,所指对象至少有两个:

There is a shop on **each** side of the street. 这条街的每一侧都有一个商店。

**Each** has his own task. 每人有各自该做的工作。



**other** 的用法:

other 既可指人,也可指物。但它不确指,因此常与定冠词或表明不确指的代词 any, some 连用。如:

There are **other** ways of doing this exercise. 做这种练习有其他几种方法。

He held a sword in one hand and a pistol in **the other**. 他一手握着剑,一手拿着枪。

Have you **any other** book (books) on this subject? 你还有这个专业方面其他的书吗?

What I say goes in at one ear and out at **the other**. 我的话在他看来是耳旁风。

**others** 作名词性成分时,有复数形式,意为“另外几个”:

We got home by 6 o'clock, but **the others** didn't get back until about 8 o'clock. 我们六点钟到家,其他人八点钟还没回来。

Show me some **some others** please. 请给我看看其他的。

**another** 的用法:

another 是 an + other 的意思,所以通常不和复数形式连用:

Would you like **another** cup of coffee? 你要再来一杯咖啡吗?

There is also **another** way of looking at this question. 还有另一种看待这个问题的方法。

I don't like this one, can you show me **another**? 我不喜欢这个,你能给我另一个看看吗?

I have two uncles, one in Chicago and **another** in Dallas. 我有两个叔叔,一个在芝加哥,另一个在达拉斯。

Saying is one thing and doing is **another**. 说是一回事,做是另一回事。

但是后面附加 two, three 等的数词或 few, 就可与复数形式连用。例如:

We need **another three** plates. (= We need three more plates.)

我们另外还需要三个盘子。

She'll have to be in the hospital for **another few** weeks. 她还要在医院多住两三个星期。

**both** 的用法:

both 表示“二者都”。如:

**Both** should make concessions. 双方都应该做出让步。

I don't know which book is better, I shall read **both**. 我不知道哪一本书好, 我将两本都读。

**Both** men were interested in this job. 两个人都对这项工作感兴趣。

**Both** (of) the films were very good. 两部电影都很好。

**Both** of them were men of the highest position in England. 他们二人都是英国地位最高的人。

**either** 和 **neither** 的用法:

either 和 neither 是一对意义相反的词。Either 相当于名词时, 表示单数概念, 意为“(二者之中)任何一个”, 作主语时, 谓语动词须用单数形式。

I'll take **either**. 我将拿其中的任何一个。

**Either** of the plans is equally dangerous. 两个计划都一样危险。

He could write with **either** hand. 他两只手都能写字。

Take **either** half; they're exactly the same. (ALD) 取哪一半都行, 它们完全一样。

Neither 的用法和 either 一样, 但意为“(二者之中)哪个也不”。

当主语用时,通常视为单数,但在口语中,从意义上也可视为复数。

例如:

I tried on two dresses, but **neither** fit me. 我试了两条裙子,但都不合适。

**Neither** of us could help laughing. 我们两个人谁都禁不住笑了。

**Neither** of the cars was (were) damaged. 两部车都没受损。

**Neither** man spoke. (DCE) 两个人都没说话。

**many** 和 **much** 的用法:

**Many** 和 **much** 都意为“许多,大量”它们的不同在于 **many** 只能代替或修饰复数可数名词,**much** 一般只能指代或修饰不可数名词。

例如:

I wonder if **many** people will come to the party. 我怀疑是否会有很多人来参加聚会。

There was so **much** food and we couldn't eat it all. 食物很多,我们无法全部吃完。

You take too **much** interest in what you wear. 你过于关心穿着了。

Do you see **much** of him? 你常遇见他吗?

Many applied, but only **a few** accepted. 许多人应征,但只是录取了少数几个。

I know **many** who would not agree with you. 我知道有好多人不会同意你的意见。

**Much** research has been done on this subject and **much** has been discovered. 关于这个题目,已经进行了大量研究,并有大量的发现。

3)形容词不同于属性代词,不能随使用作名词性成分

从以上所述可以看出形容词和属性代词的区别是:形容词可作定语,但不能单独代替名词,而属性代词既可作定语,也可单独代替名词。

有两个属性代词,它们在句中只能起限定作用(相当形容词用作定语): every, no。也有一些属性代词只能相当于名词。如: mine, ours, hers, yours, theirs 等。由不定代词 some, any, no 与 -one, -body, -thing 组合,可构成 9 个复合不定代词: someone, somebody, something, anyone, anybody, nobody, no one (或 no-one), nobody, nothing, 这些复合代词只担任名词性成分。

形容词通常只有在前加 the 等限定冠词的情况下,可以“名词化”用于名词性成分:(详见 4.1, 4.4)

**The rich** get richer, and **the poor** get poorer. (ALD) (指群体)富人越来越富,穷人越来越穷。

It approaches **the impossible**. (指抽象事物) (RHD) 这近乎不可能。

**The Chinese** speak Chinese, and the Americans English. (指民族) 中国人说汉语, 美国人说英语。

## Exercise 2

I. 说明标有序号的形容词的类别, 类别指其为性质形容词还是状态形容词, 是否属于不可比形容词:

Trust no Future, however pleasant(1)!

Let the dead(2) Past bury its dead(3)!

Act —— act in the glorious(4) Present!

Heart within and God over head!

Lives of great(5) men all remind us

We can make our lives sublime(6),

And, departing, leave behind us  
 Footsteps on the sands of time.  
 Foot steps, that, perhaps another,  
 Sailing over life's solemn(7) main(大海),  
 A forlorn(8) and shipwrecked(9) brother,  
 Seeing, shall take heart again.

(H. Longfellow, *Psalm of Life*)

II. 根据上下文意思, 在空格内填上适当的形容词(可选 active, blunt 钝或短粗的, bright, considerate 能体贴人的, eager 热切的, genial 和蔼的, good-looking, healthy, hearty 热诚的, perfect, pleasant, popular 备受爱戴的, robust 茁壮的, vigorous 精力充沛的):

The Reverend James Mavor Morell is a Christian Socialist clergyman(牧师) of the Church of England, and an \_\_\_\_\_ (1) member of the Guild(协会) of St. Mathew and the Christian Social Union.

A \_\_\_\_\_ (2), \_\_\_\_\_ (3), \_\_\_\_\_ (4) man of forty, \_\_\_\_\_ (5) and \_\_\_\_\_ (6, 注意 and 连接同一方面的属性, 如同指外表), full of energy, with \_\_\_\_\_ (7), \_\_\_\_\_ (8), \_\_\_\_\_ (9) manners, and a sound(稳健), unaffected(率真) practised(熟练的) orator(演讲人), and with a wide range(范围) and \_\_\_\_\_ (10) command(完美的运用) of expression (表情).

He has a \_\_\_\_\_ (11) complexion(面色): good forehead, with the brows(双眉) somewhat \_\_\_\_\_ (12), and the eyes \_\_\_\_\_ (13) and \_\_\_\_\_ (14), mouth resolute(显得坚决的) but not particularly well-cut(剪裁合体, 形象恰当), and a

substantial(结实的,很大的) nose, with the noble spreading nostrils(鼻孔) of the dramatic(善于激动人心的) orator, void(缺少), like all his features(五官), of subtlety(精致).

Ⅲ. 翻译下列句子,注意表示民族、国际的形容词的含义,包括其名词化用法的意思:

1. The Americans have won the cup.
2. The English are more conservative than the French.
3. My father is English, but my mother is Scottish; they're both British. (LDCE)
4. The English like traveling.
5. As I soon learnt, he was English himself.

## 第三章 形容词按形式与构成分类

### 3.1 简单形容词

形容词就其形式与构成来说,分为简单形容词、派生形容词和复合形容词。

简单形容词是指那些不带任何前后缀的形容词。如: base, noble: 卑贱, 高贵; bitter, sweet: 苦、甜; black, white: 黑、白; busy, idle: 忙、闲; cold, hot: 冷、热; deep, shallow: 深、浅; far, near: 远、近; fast, slow: 快、慢; fat, lean: 胖、瘦; front, back: 前、后; full, empty: 满、空; future, past: 将来, 过去; glad, sad: 高兴, 悲伤; green, ripe: 生、熟; hard, easy: 难、易; high, low: 高、低; large, small: 大、小; left, right: 左、右; light, heavy: 轻、重; long, short: 长、短; loose, tight: 松、紧; poor, rich: 穷、富; proud, humble: 高傲, 谦卑; right, wrong: 对、错; single, double: 单、双; soft, hard: 软、硬; strong, weak: 强、弱; tall, short: 高、矮; thick, thin: 粗、细; true, false: 真、假; up, down: 上、下; well, ill/sick: 健康, 有病, 等等。

简单形容词和其他形容词一样,一般可以兼作定语和表语。例如:

The bank isn't open. 银行还未开始营业。

an open door 开着的门

Let's be open with each other. 让我们坦诚相见吧。

an open mind 开放的思想

He is rich in experience. 他经验丰富。

She has a rich uncle. 她有一位富有的叔叔。

The coat is too short for me. 这件上衣对我来说太短了。

Jim is a short man, shorter than his wife. 吉姆是个矮个子, 比他妻子还矮。

Mary still feels weak in the legs. 玛丽仍觉得腿有些发软。

in a weak voice 用微弱的声音

You did the right thing. 你做得对。

They are right. 他们是对的。

A single tree gave shade from the sun. 只有一棵树给人一点儿遮阳的树荫。

She remained single all her life. 她一生过着单身生活。

简单形容词也可以用作补语或状语(分别详见 1.4 和 1.5)

但是表示绝对性、极端性、独一无二性、和限定相对关系的形容词(如 certain, mere, only, chief, inner, outer, 等)只能作定语。(详见 1.6 中的 1、2 两项)。

还有一些简单形容词只能作表语。它们是那些说明健康或不健康的形容词(如 well, ill, faint, fine, 等), 某些以 a-开头的形容词(如 afraid, alone, 等), 描述感觉心情的形容词(如 sorry, content, 等)和少数习惯上只用作表语的形容词(如 far, near, worth 等)。(详见 1.7 中的 1, 2, 3, 4)

简单形容词中有不少属关系形容词(front, back, left, right, 等等), 不能用副词 very, too 来修饰(见 2.2)。



### 3.2 加后缀派生而成的形容词

后缀的主要职能是改变词根的语法功能,特别是词的类属。如“名词 + 后缀”成为形容词,其语义也可能会发生某些变化。

在其他词类后面加词缀构成形容词,是形容词的主要构成法之一。形容词的后缀多种多样,主要有:

-able change vi. 改变 →	changeable a. 可变的
-al education n. 教育 →	educational a. 教育的
-an republic n. 共和国 →	republican a. 共和政体的
-ant ignore vt. 不顾,忽视 →	ignorant a. 无知的
-ar circle n. 圆 →	circular a. 圆形的
-ary element n. 元素 →	elementary a. 基本的
-ate affection n. 感情 →	affectionate a. 充满深情的
-ed talent n. 天资 →	talented a. 天资高的
-en wood n. 木料 →	wooden a. 木制的
-ent differ vi. 不同 →	different a. 不同的
-ese Japan n. 日本 →	Japanese a. 日本的
-esque picture n. 画片 →	picturesque a. 如画的
-ful harm n. 损害 →	harmful a. 有害的
-fold hundred num. 百 →	hundredfold a. 百倍的
-ian Victoria n. 维多利亚 →	Victorian a. 维多利亚时代的
-ible contempt n. 轻视 →	contemptible a. 可轻视的
-ic/ical economy n. 节约 →	economical a. 经济的,节约的
n. (另意)经济 →	economic a. 经济(方面)的
-ish fool n. 傻瓜 →	foolish a. 傻的
-ist socialism n. 社会主义 →	socialist a. 社会主义的

-ive attract v. 吸引 →	attractive a. 有吸引力的
-less help v. 帮助 →	helpless a. 无助的
-like business n. 事务 →	businesslike a. 有办事能力的
-ly friend n. 朋友 →	friendly a. 友好的
-most down a. 下面的 →	downmost a. 最下面的
-ory sense n. 感觉 →	sensory a. 感觉的
-ous danger n. 危险 →	dangerous a. 危险的
-ple three num. 三 →	triple a. 三倍的
multi (表示“多”的词根) →	multiple a. 多样的
-some fear v. 害怕 →	fearsome a. 可怕的
-ward back adv. 后面 →	backward a. 向后的
-y rain n. 雨 →	rainy a. 多雨的

加后缀派生的形容词的句法功能与其他形容词一样,一般可以兼作定语、表语、状语和补语(参见 1.1-1.5):

a normal phenomenon 正常现象(定语)

a handsome horse 骏马(定语)

a graceful dancer 舞姿优美的舞蹈演员(定语)

a remarkable change 显著的变化(定语)

It wasn't very friendly of you to slam the door in his face. 你当着他的面砰的一声把门关上,很不礼貌。(表语)

The film is quite enjoyable. 这部电影看得很令人愉快。(表语)

Susan found Sim careless. 苏珊发现西姆不细心。(宾语补语)

William was made sleepy by the lecture. 这个讲座使威廉昏昏欲睡。(主语补语)

Helen spent seven days in snow and wind, cold and hungry. 海伦又冷又饿地在风雪中熬了七天。(状语)

加后缀-able 或-ible 结尾的形容词作定语时,包括这类形容词与 only, every 等词搭配使用时,既能前置又可后置,有时意义没有区别,但有时其含义会有些改变(见 1.3 节)。

其他带-ful, -ous, -some, -able 或 -ible 等后缀的形容词,和由分词转来的形容词 exciting/excited 等一样,有些也有主动意义和被动意义。通常以 -ful, -ous, -ory, -some 结尾的形容词表主动意义,例如:

contemptuous (that feels or expresses contempt)	轻蔑的
credulous (that is too ready to believe)	轻信的
desirous (that is feeling a desire)	一心向往的
delightful (that is pleasing)	令人高兴的
frightful (that is frightening)	令人害怕的
harmful (that gives harm)	有害的
respectful (that shows respect to...)	尊敬的
satisfactory (that is satisfying)	令人满意的
shameful (that causes shame)	令人蒙受羞耻的
tiresome (that is tiring)	令人厌倦的
troublesome (that causes trouble)	令人烦恼的

但有例外,如 populous (thickly populated, 被动意义)人口稠密的; fearful (frightening 或 frightened, 兼有主动、被动意义)使人恐惧的;(人)恐惧的

而以 -able, -ible 结尾的形容词总含被动意义,例如:

acceptable (= that can be accepted)	可接受的
credible (= that can be credited)	可信的
desirable (= that can be desired)	值得向往的
respectable (= that can be respected)	值得尊敬的

preferable (= that can be preferred)	可取的
punishable (= that can be punished)	该罚的
visible (= that can be seen)	看得见的

加后缀-en 构成的形容词本义表示“用…制成”，例如：

a wooden box	木制盒子
a waxen model	蜡制模型
golden crown	金冕
woolen socks	羊毛短袜

加 -y 结尾的形容词有时也含有“用…制成”的意思。例如：  
waxy toys 蜡制玩具，但较少见。

有些物质名词 + 后缀 -en, -y 构成的形容词可表多种意义，例如：

brass (黄铜) →	brazen (黄铜色的；黄铜制的)
fish (鱼) →	fishy (鱼的；无表情的；呆滞的；可疑的)
flax (亚麻) →	flaxen (亚麻制的，亚麻般颜色的)
fog (雾) →	foggy (有雾的；模糊的；朦胧的)
gold (黄金) →	golden (黄金色的；贵重的；绝好的)
rain (雨) →	rainy (多雨的；困难的)
silver (银) →	silvery (含银的；银白色的；银铃般的)
storm (暴风雨) →	stormy (多风暴的；激烈的；暴躁的)
wave (波浪) →	wavy (多浪的；动摇的；不稳定的)
throat (喉头) →	throaty (喉音的；沙哑的)
wax (蜡) →	waxy (蜡质的；苍白的)
→	waxen (蜡黄的；蜡制的；柔顺的)
wood (木材) →	wooden (木制的；呆板的；无情的)

从上面这些例子可以看出,这类形容词除了与其词根有同源意义之外,通常还含有比喻意义。例如:

a foggy idea	糊涂的观念
a frosty handclasp	冷冰冰的握手
a fishy stare	呆呆的凝视
a fishy story	可疑的说法
a golden opportunity	绝好的机会
a golden saying	金玉良言
a rainy day	困难的日子
a wavy flame	晃动的火焰
a waxy face	苍白的脸
golden hours	幸福的时刻
a stormy debate	激烈的争论
a throaty voice	沙哑的嗓音
brazen impudence	厚颜无耻的行为
flaxen curls	淡黄色的卷发
stormy temper	暴躁的性子

某些加-ly 构成的形容词兼作副词,具有不同句法功能:

形容词(+名词)		(动词+ )副词(+形容词)	
a <u>daily</u> newspaper	日报	publish <u>daily</u>	每天出版
a <u>kindly</u> man	和蔼的人	act <u>kindly</u>	举止友好
a <u>monthly</u> bill	月账单	pay <u>monthly</u>	按月付款
an <u>early</u> train	早班车	arrive <u>early</u>	早到
a <u>quarterly</u> review	季刊	meet <u>quarterly</u>	每季见一次面
a <u>yearly</u> visit	每年一次的访问	go there <u>yearly</u>	每年去一次
<u>hourly</u> bulletin	时告	phone <u>hourly</u>	一小时打一次电话
<u>weekly</u> pay	周薪	fly <u>weekly</u>	飞机每周对开一次
<u>deadly</u> weapon	致命的武器	be <u>deadly</u> pale	面如死灰

### 3.3 加前缀派生而成的形容词

加前缀派生构成形容词是形容词多种构成法之一。主要是在名词、分词或肯定形容词之前加缀而成。

这种形容词的前缀很多,主要有以下 5 种:

#### 1) 否定前缀

前缀	例	词
a-	amoral 不属道德范畴的	asexual 无性的
dis-	discourteous 不礼貌的	dishonest 不诚实的
il-	illiterate 无文化的	illegal 不合法的
im-	impossible 不可能的	improper 不适当的
in-	inattentive 不注意的	inefficient 效率太差的
ir-	irresponsible 不负责任的	irreparable 无法修复的
non-	nonparty 非党的	nonobjective 非写实的(抽象的)
un-	unthinkable 不可思议的	unreasoning 不凭理智的

这些否定前缀中,除 a- 来自希腊语、un- 来自英国本族语外,其他都来自拉丁语,其中 non-之语气较轻,dis- 语气较重(多构成反义词)。il, im, ir 是在开头 l, m, r 的词前 in 的同化形式。

并不是每个肯定形容词都可加否定前缀从而变成否定形容词,如: close, clear, dead, deaf, enough, high, hot 等等。这类形容词的否定要用否定词 not, 如: not taxable (不纳税的), not close, not clear, not enough, not high, not hot 等。

同时,也不是每个似用否定前缀的形容词都有一个相应的肯定形式,这类形容词有: distressful 令人苦恼的, impish 顽皮的, insulting 侮辱的, irrigable 可灌溉的(以上 4 词前都非否定前缀), mistaken 误解的,错误的,等等。

## 2) 前缀“a-”

大部分以前缀“a-”构成的形容词可以用作表语形容词,但有些也可以转作副词,比较:

The two brothers are very much alike. (adj.) 两兄弟长得非常相象。

She treats all the children alike. (adv.) 她对待她所有的孩子都是一样的。

I was alone in the room. (adj.) 在房间里我是独自一人。

He lives alone. (adv.) 他现独居。

Is something amiss with the machine? (adj.) 机器有什么毛病吗?

Did I speak amiss? (adv.) 我说得不恰当吗?

这类形容词还有:afire, adrift, afloat, afoot, astray, aslant 等等。

某些以前缀“a-”构成的形容词一般不能用 very/very much 修饰,而用一些其他修饰手段,例如:

safely afloat                      安全地漂流着

all alight                          完全点燃的

all alone                          完全孤独的

fast/sound asleep                熟睡

fully/wide awake                完全醒着

有些要用 much 或 very much 修饰,例如:

very much afraid                非常害怕

very much alike                 非常相象

very much alive                 活生生的

very much alone                 非常孤独

very much ashamed (NDEC) 很羞愧

I'm very much afraid he's out. 恐怕他很可能出去了。

只是 afraid 现在也常见用 very 修饰:I'm very afraid he's out.

(Swan)

### 3) 轻蔑前缀

mal- 坏, 恶, maladjusted 调解不当的, malodorous 恶臭的  
pseudo- 伪, 假 pseudoclassic 伪古典的, pseudodemocratic 假民主的

### 4) 程度、级别前缀

hyper- 过于, 超出 hypercritical, 过于苛求的, hyperactive 过分活动的

over- 超过 overconfident 过于自信的, oversize 太大的  
sub- 次, 低 subhuman 低于人类的, subatomic 亚原子的,  
submeeting 小会, subservient 辅助性的

super- 上, 超 supernatural 超自然的, superhuman 超人的  
ultra- 超, 过 ultramodern 超现代化的, ultrafashionable 极其时髦的,  
ultrahigh 超高的, ultra-left 极“左”的,  
ultrashort 极短的

under- 次于, 低于 undergrown 发育不全的, undersize(d) 小于一般尺寸的

### 5) 态度前缀

anti- 反, 抗, anti-social 反社会的, antifebrile 退热的  
(药品)

contra- 反对, 相反 contradictory 爱争辩的, contradictive 相互对立的

contradictory 矛盾的  
counter- 反, 逆差 counteractive 起反作用的, counterfactual 反事实的



pro- 突出的;            prognathous 凸颚的  
赞成的(亲…的)      pro-American 亲美派的

#### 6) 数量前缀

demi- 半            demilune 半月(形的), demisemi 两者各半的  
bi- 两            bifocal 双焦点的, bifid 裂成两半的  
hemi- 半            hemihedral (化学用的,指晶体)半面的,  
                      hemispheric(al) 半球的  
mono- 单,一        monosyllabic 单音节的, monovalent (生物、化学  
                      用语)一价的  
multi- 多            multinational 多民族的, multilingual 多种语言的  
poly- 多            polytechnic(al) 多种科技的, polytheistic 多神论的  
semi- 半            semivowel 半元音, semiannual 半年一次的  
tri- 三            triangular 三角的, triatomic 三原子的  
uni- 单,一        uniaxial 单轴的, unilateral 一方面的,单方面的

注意: demi-, hemi-和 semi-都表示“半”的意思。但来自拉丁语的 semi-最常用, demi-构词能力较弱,来自希腊语的 hemi- 主要用于科技词语。(mono-来自希腊语)

### 3.4 以前缀“a-”构成的形容词为何多属表语形容词

以前缀“a-”构成的形容词作表语的情况很多(3.3, 2中已列举了例句):

The survivors were adrift on a raft for six days. 幸存者在木筏上漂流了六天。

Jim was aflame with democracy. 吉姆心中充满民主的激情。

The work is well afoot. 工作在顺利进行中。

A blast of wind blew the window agape. 一阵风吹开了窗子。

Her face was alight with joy. 她面带喜悦的光辉。

The child seemed asleep. 孩子好像睡着了。

The sea asleep (后位定语) 安睡中的大海

The whole school was astir when the good news came. 喜讯传来, 全校都轰动起来。

Susan's clothes were all awry. 苏珊的衣服歪七扭八。

以上形容词中的“a-”原是加于名词等的介词表示“on...”, 因而a-型形容词多保有介词短语性能而担任表语或后位定语。

drift n. 漂流 →	adrift adj. 漂流的
flame n. 火焰 →	aflame adj. 燃烧的
foot n. 脚步 →	afoot adj. 进行中的
gape n. 张口, 呵欠 →	agape adj. 张开着的
light n. 光 →	alight adj. 点着的, 烧着的
sleep n. 睡眠 →	asleep adj. 睡着的
stir n. 轰动 →	astir adj. 轰动起来的
wry adj. 歪斜的 →	awry adj. 斜的

与“a-”形容词同形的少数和少数以“a-”开头的副词也可以用作表语, 主要表示地点方位去向等。试比较:

They seem to be {  
abroad, aboard, around. (adv.)  
afraid, alert, asleep. (adj.)

他们好像是 {  
在国外, 在船上, 在附近。  
害怕的, 警惕的, 睡着的。

这类副词还有: aback, across, ahead, ashore, aside, away, 等:

They are away in the countryside. 他们下乡去了。

It was ashore on the coast of Bohai Sea. 它在渤海岸边搁浅了。

It is totally aside from the purpose. 这种作法完全离题了。

从以上可以看出, “a-”形容词和“a-”副词有时功能相同, 都可作

表语,但要注意二者表达的意思不同。“a-”形容词表达的是原名词或形容词的基本含义;而“a-”副词只表示地点、方位和去向等。

### 3.5 “状语性名词 + 形容词”care-free, sea-sick 等

复合形容词(也叫合形成形容词)的结构形式主要有五种类型(3.5-3.9)。“状语性名词 + 形容词”是其中之一。这种复合形容词中的名词用作状语,它和形容词的关系有如下两种情况:

1) 名词相当状语,修饰形容词,表示方面,用来回答 what,而不是回答 where 或 how。

例如对于 a carsick man (晕车的) 一语,我们可以说 With what is he sick (形容词)? He's sick with carsickness, sick because traveling in a car. 但不能说 \* Where (How) sick is he? 这种结构很多:

air-tight bottle	密封的瓶子
care-free life	无忧无虑的生活
class-conscious worker	有阶级觉悟的工人
childlike question	孩童般天真的问题
dust-proof machine	防尘式机器
duty-free shop	免税店
fire-proof material	耐火材料
homesick new students	想家的新生
waterproof watch	防水表
watertight work	防水工程

2) 名词相当状语,修饰形容词,表示比较的基础,例如: sea-green rug 海绿色的地毯 = rug which is as green as sea, 又如:

grass-green uniform	草绿色的军装
brick-red wall	砖红色的墙

jet-black hair	乌黑发亮的头发
midnight-blue coat	黑蓝色的外套
rock-hard ground	坚如岩石的地面

### 3.6 -ing 型复合形容词

现在分词和动名词都是由动词 + -ing 构成的, 因此像 working (正在工作的) 这样的带 -ing 的形式既能用作动名词, 也能用作现在分词。不过 -ing 形式表示独立的运动状态时为动名词, 表示所修饰人或事物的运动时为现在分词。本节先讲以现在分词构成的复合形容词。

#### 1) “名词 + -ing”型

这里被修饰名词和 -ing 结构之间是主谓宾关系(分词为及物性质), 如 a flesh-eating animal 食肉动物 = an animal which eats flesh, 又如:

book-keeping woman	女会计员
book-reviewing essays	书评文章
breath-taking workers	歇着的工人
dress-making shop	做女服(或童装)的店铺
earth-shaking change	翻天覆地的变化
epoch-making event	划时代的事件
fact-finding meeting	调查会
heart-breaking story	使人心碎的故事
horse-riding soldier	骑马的战士
house-keeping girl	管家的姑娘
law-abiding resident	守法的居民
oath-taking guy	发誓的小伙子
oil-bearing crops	油料作物

record-breaking diver	破纪录的跳水运动员
self-deceiving hypocrite	自欺欺人的伪君子
self-defeating policy	自拆台脚的政策
time-consuming job	耗费时间的工作
town-planning bureau	城市规划局

如分词为不及物性质, 则被修饰名词与 -ing 结构之间是主谓状关系, 如:

a sleepwalking patient 梦游病人 = a patient who walks in his/her sleep

ocean-going ships (ships going far across oceans) 远洋轮船

a sun-bathing old man (an old man who is bathing in the sun) 日光浴的老人

a tight-rope walking acrobat (an acrobat walking on a tight rope) 走钢丝的杂技演员

这里要特别注意, 名词 + -ing 型复合形容词与“名词 + -ing”型复合动名词作定语时的区别。二者同形异质, 前者所担任的定语属于形容词性质, 后边被修饰名词与 -ing 之间是主谓关系。而后者所担任的定语属于名词定语性质, 后被修饰名词与 -ing 之间是两种事物间由介词联系表达的修饰关系, 该-ing形式(动名词)的介词宾语指另一事物, 如:

fist-fighting skills (= skills of fighting with fists) 挥拳相斗的技术

hand-writing tests (tests of writing by hand) 书法测试

复合形容词与名词 + -ing 型复合动名词作定语的区别, 就相当于单个现在分词与单个动名词作定语的区别。

## 2) “副词 + -ing”型

这里的 -ing 和副词之间是动状关系, 如: long-playing records 密纹片 = records that play for a long time, 又如:

everlasting cotton homespun	耐用的手工织物
everblooming flower	四季开花的花卉
far-reaching effects	深远的影响
far-seeing enterpriser	有远见的企业家
hard-working peasant	勤劳的农民
long-suffering parents	长期受折磨的父母
well(ill)-meaning man	善(恶)意的人

## 3) “形容词 + -ing”型

这类复合形容词中, -ing 和其前形容词之间是系表关系, 补充说明被修饰名词的状态, 如 ordinary-looking house 看来很普通的房子 = house which looks ordinary, 又如:

easy-going man	脾气随和的人
good-looking dress	好看的衣裙
fine-sounding words	动听的言词; 高调

### 3.7 “-ed/-t/-en”型复合形容词(包括其他词尾类型过去分词构成者)

这类复合形容词就是过去分词型复合形容词, 通常有被动含义。

#### 1) “名词 + 过去分词”型

这里的过去分词和其前的名词之间是动、状关系, 而该复合形容词和其后被修饰的名词之间是被动性的主谓关系, 例如, handmade goods (手工制品) = goods which are made by hand. 这类形容词用途也很广, 又如:

airborne division	空降师
candle-lit table	烛光照亮的桌子
custom-built shoes	定做的鞋
hand-operated pump	手工操作泵
heart-felt thanks	衷心的感谢
home-brewed datewine	家酿枣酒
horse-drawn cart	马车
man-made satellite	人造卫星
self-employed man	个体经营者
thunder-struck building	遭雷击的建筑物
weather-beaten fisherman	饱经风霜的渔民

少数被动意义趋于消失的过去分词构成复合形容词时,被修饰名词与该复合形容词之间就不是被动主谓关系了,如:a heart-broken girl (heart 与 broken 之间是主表关系) 极度伤心的女孩(相当 a girl with a broken heart)。

## 2) “副词 + 过去分词”型

这里副词是该过去分词的修饰语,二者构成复合形容词。复合形容词与其所修饰的名词之间是被动意义的主谓关系。例如: highly-developed industry (高度发展的工业) = industry which is highly developed 又如:

badly-lighted room	光线很暗的房间
fully-boiled water	充分煮沸的水
simply-furnished drawing room	陈设简单的客厅
well-cultivated fields	精耕细作的土地
well-dressed woman	穿着讲究的妇女
far-fetched comparison	牵强附会的比较

### 3) “形容词 + 名词 -ed”型

这里名词所带-ed 已不是过去分词词尾,而是形容词后缀,前一形容词对于带 -ed 名词说来,是定语或表语,起限定、修饰作用,例如:a cross-eyed boy = a boy whose eyes are cross 或 a boy who has cross eyes 逗眼(内斜视)男孩,又如:

far-sighted scientist	有远见的科学家
flat-chested animal	扁平胸的动物
flat-footed man	平脚底的人
hard-hearted boss	无情的老板
open-minded old lady	思想开通的老太太
quick-witted soldier	机敏的战士
soft-footed invigilator	脚步很轻的监考人
warm-hearted teacher	热心的老师

### 4) “数词 + 名词-ed”型

在这种复合形容词中,实际上数词是加形容词后缀-ed 的名词的定语,二者共同限定被修饰的名词,如:

one-legged chicken (一条腿的鸡)	= chicken with one leg
three-laned avenue (三股车道的大路)	= avenue with three lanes

## 3.8 “名词 + -ed”型复合形容词 four-wheel(ed)等

这类复合形容词看上去像是由状语 + -ed 分词构成(如 3.7 中的 3),而实际上是由名词 + -ed 构成的,这里形容词起表语作用,说明相随的名词。如:

fine -grained (颗粒细小的)	= the grains are fine
flat-chested (扁平胸的)	= the chest is flat
hard-hearted (无情的)	= the heart is hard



medium-sized machines (中型机器) = the machines' size is medium

old-fashioned dress (老式服装) = the dress's fashion is old

open-minded (头脑开通的) = one's mind is open

quick-witted (机敏的) = one's wit(头脑)is quick

slow-footed (脚步慢的) = one's foot (step) is slow

four-wheel(ed) robot(四轮机器人)

这类复合形容词既可作名词的前置定语,也可以用作表语。例如:

She is an open-minded woman. (定语)她是位思想开通的妇女。

也可以说 The woman is open-minded. (表语)这位妇女思想开通。

This is a flat-chested fish. (定语)这是种胸扁平的鱼。也可以说

The fish is flat-chested. 这种鱼的胸是扁平的。

### 3.9 “修饰语 + 名词”型复合形容词 four-star 等

1) “形容词 + 名词(不带-ed)”构成复合形容词,其中的形容词修饰其后的名词,形成一个复合概念,进而共同修饰它们后面的名词。例如: a poor class district (贫民区) = district which is inhabited by poor classes 又如:

foreign style building 外国风格的建筑物

low grade criteria 低级标准

high level speech 高水平的讲话

good quality rice 优质大米

new term exam 新学期考试

four-star general 四星级将军,上将

有一种结构貌似“形容词 + 名词”型复合形容词,其实不是,切莫混同,例如:the blue April sky (四月的蓝天), blue 与 April 并列修饰 sky,但决不是 blue + April (蓝色四月)构成复合形容词,而是 = the blue sky of (in) April。又如:a big Christmas dinner (大型圣诞晚餐),也不是 big + Christmas 构成复合形容词,而是:big dinner for the celebration of Christmas。这种结构也很常用:

loyal party supporter	忠诚的党的支持者
lovely silk dress	美丽的丝绸衣裙
new straw hat	新草帽

在这种并列修饰结构中,形容词和第一个名词之间不能用连字符“-”连结,不能写成 blue-April, lovely-silk, big-Christmas, new-straw, 而后边两个名词之间却有时可以使用“-”。如可以写成 new straw-hat, lovely silk-dress。

## 2) “基数词 + 名词”构成复合形容词

基数词可以与名词构成复合形容词,中间常用“-”号连接,表示时间,度量等,例如:

a five-kilo bag of flour	5 公斤重的一袋面粉
a four-hour meeting	历时 4 小时的会议
a six-foot hole	一个 6 英尺深的洞
a three-acre plot	一块 3 英亩的田地
a two-hour journey	一次两小时的行程
a ten-minute walk	一次 10 分钟的步行
a three-year old building	一座建成有 3 年之久的建筑物
a twelve-inch ruler	一把 12 英寸长的尺子
a two-day conference	为期两天的大会
a two-litre car	车缸容量为 2 公升的汽车

a two-week holiday	一段两周的假期
a £ 90,000 house	一幢价值 9 万英镑的房子

从以上诸例可以看出,这类复合形容词作定语,所含名词不用复数形式,即使前面用了大于一的数词。但有时候该定语名词也可用复数形式,注意那时数词与复数名词之间不加连词号:

a two weeks holiday	两周假期
a two weeks' holiday	
a ten days' absence (CGEL 17.108)	十天的缺席
a ten days (撇号从略) absence (ib)	
a ten-day absence (ib)	
a ten day (很少略去连词号) absence (ib)	

### 3) “序数词 + 名词”型复合形容词

a first-rate film	一部一流的电影
a nineteenth-century novel	一部 19 世纪的小说
a second-hand car	一辆二手汽车
a third-floor flat	(在英国)一套位于四层楼的公寓 (在美国)一套位于三层楼的公寓 (但美国英语更常用 apartment)

### 4) “指示代词 + 名词所有格”型复合形容词

这种类型的复合形容词无论从形式上还是从意义上都非常接近于“修饰语 + 名词”型复合形容词,所以我们将其并列讲述。这种类型的复合形容词相当于“名词 + of... 短语”,如: this student's father (学生的父亲) = father of this student。这种结构用途很广:

that city's area	那座城市的面积
this mountain's height	这座山的高度

those mens' chairs            那些男人的椅子  
these officers' computers    这些警官的计算机

### 3.10 复合形容词的连结

#### 1) 短语型复合形容词(简短者中有连词号)

有些复合形容词是由不同类型的短语构成的,它们被视为一个词,作定语,而其中的每个组成部分本身无论在词义上还是在拼写上都不发生变化。

i. 副词随后和介词随后型,如:

a long-drawn-out (副词) struggle 长期进行的斗争

a tightly fastened down (副词) mouth 紧闭的嘴巴

well-nourished and well brought up (副词) children 营养好,教养好的孩子们

a much talked about (介词) affair 议论纷纷的事情

undreamed-of (介词) success 梦想不到的成功

unheard-of (介词) wonders 前所未有的奇迹

unpaid-for (介词) goods 未付款的货物

ii. 介词短语型

a for ever remembered incident 永远铭记的事件

the for him very ordinary occurrence 对他很平常的事

the to me interesting idea 使我感兴趣的意见

this in many respects inferior work 这件多方面很差的工作

this to her absolutely new experience 这段对她全新的经历

iii. 带 to 的动词不定式短语型

those clearly to be avoided mistakes 那些明显需要避免的错误

those not to be avoided expenses 那些不可避免的开支

## 2) 其他复合形容词中间有无连词号

从 3.5 到本节,一直在讲复合形容词。至此,我们可以总结一下,复合形容词中间连词号的用法。其中连词号使用与否无明确规则可循,下面是四条笼统的原则:

i. 最常用复合形容词可连写 —

homemade	家庭自制的
postgraduate	研究生的
wideawake	清醒的
sunburnt	晒黑的
inboard	在机内的

ii. 非常用复合形容词中带“-”连词号 — (多例见上节 1, 2, 3)

iii. self-复合形容词带“-”连词号 —

self-taught, self-made	靠自己努力而成功的
self-righteous	自以为是的
self-registering	自己记录式的

iv. 有时带或不带“-”连词号均可 —

hand writing paper
handwriting paper
hand-writing paper

本节所举用例子更说明了这一点。在“a long-drawn-out”中用了“-”,但在“tightly fastened down”中却不用“-”。用还是不用连字号主要取决于是否方便,如果只有用“-”,意思才更清楚或更明了就一定要用,但如果不用“-”,句意就很清楚,很明了,那么就没有必要用。在 a long-drawn-out 中用了“-”之后,作为一个形容词来修饰

“struggle”，而在 tightly fastened down mouth 中不用“-”，意思也一目了然，这时再用“-”就没有必要。说到底，使用“-”为的是更清楚地表明整个词组用作一个句子成分。

这里顺便讲一下附加于形容词之前的“nice and”，如“nice and clean”，“nice and cool”，“nice and warm”，“nice and soft”等，这里 nice and 起的是类似副词的作用，修饰其后的形容词，例如：

The car is going nice and fast. 意思是：It is going fast in a nice way. 或 satisfactorily fast, 那辆车跑得相当快。

又如：The house stands nice and high. 意思是 It stands high enough to satisfy you. 那房子高得使你满意。与此相似，good and... = very, 例如：good and hot/ tired/hard/sorry = very hot/tired/hard/sorry, “high and dry talk” = “abstract talk” 抽象的谈话。“high and mighty manner” = “proud, arrogant manner” 高傲自大的态度。

另外，偶见两个或多个同义或近义的形容词并列在名词之前(不加连字号)作定语，这些并列的同义形容词只是达到加强效果作用，下面这些句子很有意思：

Don't worry about such small, little thing. 不要担心这样琐碎的小事。

He had some excellent, good wine. 他有绝好的酒。

He was a tall, big, husky fellow. 他是个五大三粗的家伙。

I saw a great, big tiger. 我看见一只特大老虎。

It was a terrible, fearful-looking thing. 那是个非常可怕的东西。

It was only a tiny, little spot. 它仅是个小小的点子。

She has a rich, golden voice. 她有一副美妙的金嗓子。

That was your great, good luck. 那正是你的时来运转。

## Exercise 3

### I. 根据意思, 写出相应的复合形容词:

1. (a story) so terrifying that it raises the hair on your head
2. (an activity) that consumes too much of your time
3. (cakes) that have been made at home
4. (a speed) that takes your breath away
5. (the performance) that won an award

### II. 读下面的短文, 划表分别列出简单形容词, 复合形容词, 加前后缀派生出来的形容词:

Radiating from that house, with its *crumbling* (1) walls, its thumps and shadows, its *fancied* (2) foxes under the floor, I moved along paths that lengthened inch by inch with my *mounting* (3) strength of days. 虽然那所房子墙壁似将坍塌、走过时噤噤地响、处处暗影阴森森的, 而且我设想地板底下藏着狐狸, 我还是随着自己一天天长大、力气渐渐增长、而以那房子为中心, 向四外漫游——我所走的路径在一点儿一点儿地延伸。

From stone to stone in the *trackless* (4) yard I sent forth my acorn shell of senses, moving through *unfathomable* (5) oceans like a South Sea savage island-hopping across the Pacific. 从一块石头到另一块石头, 我在全无道路的庭院里, 把我的点滴知觉送向前去, 就像一个南洋野人在横过太平洋、从一个小岛跨向另一个小岛, 我也在穿越那深不可测的大洋。

Antennae(触角) of eyes and nose and *grubbing* (6) fingers captured a few tufts of grass, a fern, a slug, the skull of a bird,

a grotto of *bright* (7) snails. 先是把眼睛和鼻子当做触须去探查,随后用搜寻的手指,捕获几丛青草、一把羊齿植物、一个鼻涕虫、一只死鸟的脑壳、一个洞穴里的亮晶晶的蜗牛。

Through the *long* (8) summer ages of those first few days I enlarged my world and mapped it in my mind, its *secure* (9) havens, its dust-deserts and puddles, its peaks of dirt and *flag-flying* (10) bushes. 在那最初的一些日子里,在那感觉极其漫长的夏日,我扩展着我的世界,心里描绘出这片大地的地图:几处安全的避难港湾、几处尘封的荒凉境界、几处汪着水洼、几座脏兮兮的高耸的土堆、几丛枝叶招摇如旗帜飘扬的树丛。

Returning, too, *dry-throated* (11), over and over again, to its several *well-prodded* (12) horrors: the bird's *gaping* (13) bones in its cage of *old* (14) sticks; the *black* (15) flies in the corner, *slimy* (16) *dead* (17); *dry* (18) rags of snakes; and the *crowded* (19), *rotting* (20), *silent-roaring* (21) city of a cat's *grub-captured* (22) carcass. 即使紧张得嗓子发干,我也一次又一次地反复寻访那个世界的那几种拨弄得特别恐怖的所在:陈旧木栏插成的笼子里那干裂的鸟儿的骨头、角落里那堆粘糊糊的黑黝黝的死苍蝇、几条蛇脱下来的那些干瘪破碎的蛇皮,还有腐烂的、被大蛆密密麻麻爬满的、那就像表面安静而实际繁忙的大城市般的猫的尸体。

(Laurie Lee, *Cider with Rosie, A Memory of Childhood*)

Ⅲ. 根据句意,写出相应的-ed型或具有其他过去分词词尾形式的复合形容词:

1. He reads many books. He is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The child's eyes were filled with tears. His \_\_\_\_\_ eyes looked around for sympathy.



3. John got good training as a mechanic. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ mechanic.
4. They loaded too much coal on the truck. It was \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The snow had covered the countryside during the night. We must go skiing on the \_\_\_\_\_ hills.
6. The movie star was tall and blonde, with blue eyes. \_\_\_\_\_ blondes are considered very attractive.

IV. 写出下列词加后缀后派生出来的形容词(如加 -able, -ary, -ative, -ful, -ic, -ish, -ious, -itive, -tific, -ual, 注意有的原来末尾的字母要变动或去掉):

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. science | 6. honor    |
| 2. poet    | 7. mystery  |
| 3. child   | 8. talk     |
| 4. station | 9. fact     |
| 5. faith   | 10. compete |

V. 给下列词加前缀, 使之意思相反(如加 dis-, il-, im-, in-, ir-, un-):

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. agreeable  | 6. deniable    |
| 2. accustomed | 7. polite      |
| 3. active     | 8. dispensable |
| 4. adequate   | 9. reparable   |
| 5. relevant   | 10. organized  |

## 第四章 形容词的名词化与名词定语、 名词转成形容词

### 4.1 形容词兼名词

英语中有些词既可以用作形容词,又能兼作名词。兼作名词用时,可以带前置修饰语(代词,指示代词,物主代词,数词等)。读者往往会感到这些形容词的后面隐含了某个名词,而且在理解句意时自然地会把“缺省了”的名词补上去。这类词的句法功能通常是主语,宾语,表语。下面是一些常见的例子:

There was only one black (student) in my class. 我班只有一个黑皮肤的学生。

We will nurse your sick (people), clothe your naked (people) and feed your hungry (people). 我们将看护你们的病人,为无吃无穿之人提供食物与衣裳。

It's the duty of the Government to care for our poor (men) and our unemployed (men). 关心我们的穷人和失业者是政府的责任。

We poor (people) become rich now. 我们穷人现在也富裕了。

Both young (man) and old (man) enjoyed themselves at the party. 那青年和老人在聚会上都很开心(也可能指 young people and old people, 若干青年和老人)。

Our six-year-old (child) is at school. 我们那个6岁的孩子在上  
学。

The red (flower) is the largest in the garden. 那枝红花是花园里最大的花。

#### 4.2 形容词前加 the(泛指或确指)名词化用法

有些形容词可以和定冠词连用,使形容词名词化,在句中作定语、宾语等。名词化了的形容词有时泛指一类人或事物,有时确指某个或某些人或事物。

1) 可以名词化的形容词有四种类型:

i. 能前置修饰指人名词的形容词:

the blind(盲人), the deaf(聋子), the unemployed(失业者),  
the living/the dead(生者/死者), the rich/the poor(富人/穷人)

ii. 表示国籍的,即指某国人的形容词。这些形容词多以-ch, -sh 或 -ese 结尾的,如: the Dutch (荷兰人), the English(英国人), the Irish(爱尔兰人), the Lebanese(黎巴嫩人)。这些词多有指类的复数含义,如 the Japanese, 意思是 all (the) Japanese people。如果表示若干个人,英国人,法国人,荷兰人,爱尔兰人要用-men, /women 形式。我们不能说 \* those two Dutch/French/English 或 many Dutch/many French/many English, 而应说 those two Dutchmen, 或 many Dutchmen/many Frenchmen/many Englishmen。

但部分指国籍、民族的形容词(特别是以-an 结尾的),用于名词化指人时有单复数形式之分(见 Swan p. 397):

单数	复数
a Brazilian	the Brazilians
a Chilean	the Chileans
a Czech	the Czechs
比较 a Frenchman,	the French

a German	the Germans
a Greek	the Greeks
an Italian	the Italians
a Mexican	the Mexicans
a Thai	the Thais
a Filipino	the Filipinos
a Negro	the Negroes
a Russian	2/many Russians
a Japanese	2/many Japanese (Japanese 不变)

少数指国籍、民族的形容词不能名词化指人,因为另有通用的相应名词:

形容词	单数	复数
Danish	a Dane	the Danes
Jewish	a Jew	the Jews
Polish	a Pole	the Poles
Scottish	a Scot	the Scots

iii. 一些表示种族、集团、或阶层的形容词,形容词名词化时通常用复数形式。如:the moderns(现代人), the Turks (土耳其人), the whites and blacks(白种人与黑种人)。

iv. 表示抽象性质状态或笼统类属的形容词:

the bad/good	坏事(邪恶)/好事(善良)
the sentimental	多愁善感之人,引起伤感的事物
the supernatural	超自然的现象
the unexpected	出乎意料的事

在文学语言中,形容词前面加 the 常指抽象的概念,当其为主语时谓语动词用单数,如: The beautiful is not always the same as the good. 漂亮的不总是好的。

2) 名词化了的形容词有时含有复数意义,泛指不同种类类别的人或物,动词用复数形式,例如:

The young are usually intolerant. 年轻人一般不肯忍让。

The aged are well taken care of in the community. 这个社区里的老人都得到很好的照顾。

Gorky had great sympathy for the poor. 高尔基非常同情穷人。

Nurses are required to look after the sick and wounded, the old and infirm. 这里还需要护士来照料老弱病残者。

应当注意另外一些形容词不能这样名词化以表示一群人,如不能说 the foreign (外国人), the happy (幸福的人), the disgusting (讨厌的人) 等等。

名词化的形容词或分词本身可以有前置或后置修饰语,例如:

The very wise avoid such temptations. 真正明智的人避而不受这样的诱惑。

The emotionally disturbed and the physically and mentally handicapped need the aid of society. 情感上受到打击和精神上、躯体上有残疾的人需要社会的帮助。

They are the young at heart. 他们人老心不老。

We are working hard for the common good. 我们正在为大众的利益而努力工作。

有时候,一些表示人的形容词用复数以示类指,如: the ancients 古人, the immortals 不朽者或神仙, 等等。

表示民族的形容词,有时不是用类指整个民族,而是指其中的一部分人,如,代表各自国家的球队,军队,使团等等:

The British won the Americans in the final. 决赛中英国队战胜了美国队。

In 1796 the French invaded northern Italy. 1796 年法国(部队)入侵意大利北部地区。

表抽象性质的形容词名词化当主语时,句中谓语动词多用单数。

例如:

The unknown is always something to be feared. 未知的东西总是一种令人害怕的东西。

He didn't want to disturb the quiet that was needed by patients. 他不愿意打扰病人需要的安静环境。

The good in him outweighs the bad. 他的优点多于缺点。

3) 有些名词化了的形容词特指某个或某些人或事物,这时要分别用单数或复数形式。例如:

There are three handicapped children in the group. The blind is ten, the deaf is eleven and the dumb is nine. 该组有三个残疾儿童,盲童 10 岁,耳聋(可能不哑)的 11 岁,哑童 9 岁。

The former is a painter and the latter is a composer. 前者是一名画家,而后者是一名作曲家。

The accused was sentenced to six years' imprisonment. 被告被判处了六年徒刑。

He has two pencils in his hand. I like the blue (one). 他手里拿着两支铅笔,我喜欢那支蓝色的。

The mentally ill is her grand nephew. 有精神病的那个人是她的侄孙。

The former 和 the latter 也可指复数事物,做主语时与复数谓语动词连用,如:

Beans and peas are of good value. The former (latter) are cheap.

菜豆和豌豆都很有营养。前者(后者)很便宜。

形容词的最高级通常由前置定冠词使其名词化,以示特指,例如:

I'm the oldest in my family. 在我们家我年龄最大。

"Which one should I get?" "我该要哪个?"

"The cheapest." "要最便宜的那个。"

某些习惯用语中原级形容词本不加 the,但也常见其用于 the + 形容词最高级形式:

I will give you a definite answer on Friday at the latest. 我最迟星期五给你确切的回答。

She took leave of the party in the liveliest of spirits. 她兴致很好地和大家告辞而去。

#### 4.3 形容词前加 a/an 的名词化用法

有少数形容词可加不定冠词而名词化。例如:

You are such a silly. 你真是个大傻瓜。

She is a dear. 她是个招人喜欢的孩子。

A worse(better) might come in her place. (RHD) 前来代替她的可能是更糟(较好)的一个。

There is an automatic in the policeman's hand. 警察手里拿着一把自动手枪。(以 an automatic 代替 an automatic pistol)

#### 4.4 不加冠词的形容词用作名词

有些形容词可以直接用作名词,特别在非正式谈话中需要在二

者或多个中选择时,人们经常既不用冠词,也不加名词,只把形容词当作名词用。例如:你去照相馆冲洗照片,营业人员问你:“Matt or gloss?”用光泽纸还是用布纹纸洗?而不问“Matt or gloss paper?”又如:

“Three pints of bitter, please?”请给我三品脱苦啤酒。

“Best or ordinary?”“最好的还是一般的(啤酒)?”

It is necessary to make a distinction between right and wrong. 必须分清是非。

#### 4.5 形容词加 -s/-es 转作名词

还有一些形容词的名词化不是通过前加冠词,而是在词尾加 -s/-es而成,例如:

belongings	所有物品
drinkables	饮料
earnings	收入
eatables	食物
goods	货物
greens	蔬菜
lodgings	公寓房间
(im)movables	(不)动产
odds	差异
riches	财产
surroundings	环境
sweets	糖食,糖果
tropics	热带
unmentionables	(戏谑说法)裤子
valuables	贵重物品



这类名词化了的形容词含复数意义,做主语时连用的动词用复数形式,例如:

How many sweets are there in the jar? 那个广口瓶里有多少糖果?

All my belongs are in this bag. 我所有的东西都在这个袋子里。

#### 4.6 名词单数、复数形式担任定语

名词放在另一个名词之前作定语时几乎总是用单数形式(尽管其含义有时是复数):

brain concussion	脑震荡
Chen brothers	陈氏兄弟
cotton goods	棉织品
emergency department	急诊室(部)
employment bureau	职业介绍所
evening newspaper	晚报
head nurse	护士长
nine penny stamp	九便士/美分的邮票
shoe-repairers	修鞋匠
welcome speech	欢迎词
West Lake Exhibition	西湖展览会

两个或多个名词同时作定语,如:

oil production costs	石油生产费用
road accident research center	道路交通事故研究中心

单数名词定语在报纸题目中用得相当普遍,因其节省空间。但在若干情况下也有需用复数的:

a clothes basket	衣筐
arms depot	军火库
a two-thirds majority	三分之二多数
commodities fair	商品交易会
goods train	货车
grassroots opinion	基层群众意见
machines hall	机器展厅
men students	男生
savings bank	储蓄银行
sports meeting	运动会
the United States government	美国政府
the Foreign Languages Department	外语系

有些单数名词和其复数形成的意义不同,要根据上下文选用其正确形式,切勿随意把单复数形式换来换去。下面是一组名词单、复数形式意义不同的例子:

ash / ashes	灰烬 / 骨灰
content / contents	内容 / 目录
custom / customs	习惯 / 海关
damage / damages	损害 / 赔偿金
drawer / drawers	抽屉 / 衬裤
fund / funds	基金/资金, 现款
glass / glasses	玻璃 / 眼镜
look / looks	脸色 / 容貌
manner / manners	态度 / 礼貌
minute / minutes	分钟 / 会议记录
pain / pains	痛苦 / 努力

saving / savings	节约 / 储金, 存款
work / works	工作 / 工厂, 著作

有时单复数形式的意义相差很远(如 air/airs 空气/神气), 有时又相当接近(如 fund/funds, 见上)。当然上述单数名词也各有自己的复数, 如: dirty looks (难看的脸色), five minutes(五分钟)。

#### 4.7 名词定语和形容词的比较

名词主要作主语、表语、宾语等名词性成分, 但也常用作定语:

He's studying physics at a university. (名词作宾语)

He's taking a physics course. (名词作定语)

She dislikes this city. (名词作宾语)

She dislikes city life. (名词作定语)

名词定语又如:

stone wall 石头墙

food problem 吃饭问题

kitchen door 厨房门

honey-bee 蜜蜂

paper mill 造纸厂

mail man 邮递员

leather factory 皮革厂

fire brigade 消防队

straw hat 草帽

student days 学生时代

silk handkerchief 丝绸手绢

college president 大学校长

Shanghai paper 上海纸

Pacific Mail Steamship 太平洋邮

政轮船公司

在这种短语中, 前面的名词总是作为定语, 修饰其后的名词。它们之间的关系是多种多样的。如, stone wall, 意思是 wall made of stone, honey-bee 意思是 bee producing honey, food problem 意思是 the problem of food, fire brigade 意思是 a brigade for fighting fire。

这种表达方式应该掌握,因为它使句子的结构简短化,例如:the nine-o'clock arithmetic class = the class in arithmetic which comes at nine o'clock,前者比后者简短。常说 the Pacific Mail Steamship Co. sailing schedule,而不说 the schedule for sailing of the Pacific Mail Steamship Co.,说 He owns a paper mill. 而不说 He owns a mill for manufacturing paper。说 motor roads 比 roads for motor cars 更符合英语的习惯。

这种用法非常像汉语的用法,如,“中国茶” Chinese tea,“清华大学校长” Tsinghua University president,“旅费” journey expenses,等等。

像 stone, fire 这样的名词作定语,并未转成形容词;它们没有比较级和最高级的形式,亦不能被 very 等词所修饰。值得注意的是,有些是同根名词和形容词(即成对的名词和形容词),如 gold 和 golden 都可用作前置定语,但其含义不同,其中形容词定语多用于比喻,例如:

gold watch = a watch which is made of gold 金表

golden hours = happy hours 幸福时刻

又如:

heart trouble 心脏病

silver dollar 银元

stone house 石头房子

snow mountain 雪山

rose garden 玫瑰园

color film 彩色电影

production plan 生产计划

a lead pipe 铅制管子

silk stockings 丝袜

a stone wall 用石头砌成的墙

hearty welcome 热忱的欢迎

silvery hair 银白色的头发

stony heart 铁石心肠

snowy curtain 雪白的窗帘

rosy cheeks 红红的脸颊

colorful dresses 色彩鲜艳的服装

productive labor 富有成果的劳动

leaden steps 像铅一样沉重的脚步

silky hair 丝一般有光泽的头发

stony silence 死一般的寂静

还有些成对的形容词和名词中的名词可以用作某种搭配中的定语,而形容词就不能用于那种搭配,例如: water pipe 水管,不能说 watery pipe。 fire brigade 消防大队,不能说 firey brigade。 geography class 地理课,不能说 geographical class。 tuberculosis doctor 结核病专科大夫,不等于 tubercular doctor 患结核病的大夫。

不过,有时名词定语与由名词派生的形容词定语用法是相似的,甚至可以并列使用:

He's taking a { medical course. (= course in medicine) 他正学医。  
physics course. (= course in physics) 他正在学物理。

She dislikes { suburban life. (life in a suburb) 她不喜欢郊区生活。  
city life. (life in a city) 她不喜欢城市生活。

She likes both cotton and woolen dresses. 棉、毛衣服她都喜欢。

They detest both suburban and city life. 对于郊区和城市生活,他们都很讨厌。

#### 4.8 名词转成形容词

转化是英语中四种主要构词法(加前缀,加后缀,合成法和转化法)之一。转化法是不改变词的形态,只是使词的句法功能发生变化,从而使该词具有新的意义和作用。名词用法转化成形容词用法是诸多词类转化中的一类。

名词转成形容词,不再表示原指的事物,转而表示相关的性质状态(它作定语用,是其后名词定语,不是说明事物与事物的关系):

chain 一系列的,连锁的: a chain smoker 连续不断抽烟的人

choice 特别好的,精选的,上选的: choice goods 上选品

dwarf 矮小的: a dwarf tree 矮树, dwarf furniture 矮型家具

fancy 精心设计的;空想的: a fancy cake 精心设计的蛋糕, a

fancy idea 奇异的想法

giant 巨大的: a giant corporation 巨大的公司, a giant photograph  
巨幅照片

net 净的, 纯的: a net price 实价, a net profit 纯(净)利

prize 入选的, 得奖的: a prize dog 得奖的狗, a prize cup 奖杯

summit 高层次的: a summit meeting 最高级会议

top 最高的, 第一的: on the top floor, 在最高一层楼, top ten 最  
杰出的十位, 十佳

zero 完全不存在的: zero growth 零增长, zero cost 等于零的代价

原名词短语, 词间加连词号后惯用作形容词短语, 无“-”为名词  
短语性质, 有“-”为形容词性质, 例如:

first-class	最高级的, 优秀的
first-string	(体育上) 一流的, 最佳的
grass-roots	基层的
last-minute	最后一刻的
carrot-and-stick	(大棒加胡萝卜) 软硬兼施的
face-to-face	面对面的
hand-in-hand	手拉手的
hand-to-mouth	勉强糊口的, 过一天算一天的
heart-to-heart	诚恳而坦率的
man-to-man	开诚布公的
step-by-step	一步一步的, 按部就班的
tit-for-tat	以牙还牙的, 针锋相对的
bread-and-butter	(偶见不加连字号, 规范用法要加) 谋生必需的
heart-and-soul	(同上) 全心全意的, 热心的
life-or(and)-death	生死攸关的

其他词构成的短语也可转作形容词短语, 比较:

all-or-nothing (原代词短语) 孤注一掷的  
touch-and-go (原动词短语) 危急的(形势)  
hit-or-miss (原动词短语) 无计划的, 无事先考虑的。  
hang-dog air (原动词短语) 垂头丧气的(样子)  
hard-and-fast (副词/形容词短语) 牢牢地; 严格不变的

社会在不断地发展, 语言也随之不断地更新和补充。我们必须注意到, 英语有一些词逻辑上似乎不对, 但现实习惯已经认可了。这类形容词在句中实际上起名词前置定语的句子作用。例如:

a dead march 就成了 a funeral march(哀乐)的正确表达形式了。但 a death march 意思是“向着死亡的进军”(指战俘往集中营的行军)。A mad-doctor 就成了 a doctor of brain diseases(精神病医生)的另一种表达形式。认可这些词为的是语言的简化和方便。又如: Foreign Office 严格地说来应该是 Foreign Affairs Office。常被称为 foreign secretary (外交大臣, 部长), 但实际上他根本不是外国人。这样的例子还很多:

criminal lawyer = lawyer for criminal cases (刑法律师)

Greek student = student of Greek language and literature (希腊语之学生)

Indian problem = problem of India (印度问题)

English teacher = teacher of English who may be a Chinese (英语教师)

dead list = list of the dead in battle (阵亡名单)

sick room  $\neq$  a room which is sick, 而 = a room for sick people (病房)

female education = education for women (女子教育)

comparative literature = comparative study of the literature of different peoples (比较文学)

clinical thermometer = one for clinical use (医用体温表)  
married life = life of married men or women (婚后生活)  
dying will = will of a dying man(临终遗嘱)  
historical novelist = a writer of historical novels (历史小说作家)  
easy money = money that is earned without trouble(不费劲赚来的钱)  
difficult friend = friend difficult to get along with (难处的朋友)  
lazy time = time when one is lazy or idle (令人懒洋洋的时候)

我们可能发现,一方面在 dead list 中,形容词 dead 用作名词,来修饰其后的名词。另一方面 death bed (= that on which one dies ) 中,名词 death 置于名词 bed 之前,与 bed 构成合成词,实际上前者限定后者。在 death-rate (= the rate of death in a population, 死亡率) 中,连字号“-”连结了两个名词,所以两者之间的关系也是限定和被限定的关系。

## Exercise 4

I. 试在下列各句中,用下划线划出前面加 the 的名词化的形容词:

1. Have you ever read *The Country of the Blind* by H. G. Wells?
2. When tea was first brought to England it cost so much money that only the rich could buy it.
3. The dog Balthasar had a nose for the unusual.
4. We went out into the cool.
5. They started late and the last part of their journey was made in the dark.
6. All of a sudden the wind fell and in the quiet we could hear the voices of people on the shore.



7. The accused was found guilty.
8. The ancients considered the Earth the centre of the Universe.
9. The wounded were dispatched to the rear on ambulance transport planes.
10. Our Army men have proved themselves the bravest of the brave.

**II. 试用名词化形容词把下列各句译成英语(如 a sudden, the brave, the dark, the green, the old, the young, in common):**

1. 突然雷雨大作。
2. 老年人和青年人都参加了工作。
3. 绿色使人愉快。
4. 我们在黑暗中迷了路。
5. 他们有不少共同点。
6. 勇敢的人不怕危险。

**III. 根据给出的汉语填空, 注意使用名词化的形容词, 如 black, classics, nobles, (a) medical, a silly, the electricians:**

1. I had my \_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday. (我周四作了一次体格检查。)
2. Don't be such a \_\_\_\_\_! (别那么傻了!)
3. There's something the matter with the \_\_\_\_\_ in my car. (我的汽车里的电器系统出了毛病。)
4. There was only one \_\_\_\_\_ in my class. (在我班只有一个黑人。)
5. You won't find many \_\_\_\_\_ in our library. (你在我们的图书馆里找不到很多的古典文学。)
6. The king greeted his \_\_\_\_\_. (国王向贵族们致意。)

IV. 翻译下列带有名词定语的词组:

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. the city council   | 5. a kitchen cabinet        |
| 2. a love poem        | 6. a cotton dress           |
| 3. a stone wall       | 7. a pair of summer glasses |
| 4. the August weather | 8. a gold watch             |

V. 划出由形容词转化成的名词, 它们多带有限定词 *the, a, no* 等, 但也有的不带限定词:

1. Civilized people ought to be able to find a way of setting their disputes other than by seeing which side can kill off the greater number of the other side, and then saying that side which has killed most has won — and not only it has won, but, because it has won, has been in the right.
2. That is what the story of mankind has on the whole been like.  
人类的历史, 整个看来, 就像是这个样子。
3. To protect the whale from the cold of the arctic seas, nature has provided it with a thick covering of fat called blubber.
4. No machine would not work for long if it were not properly lubricated.
5. Then, all of a sudden, it started off.
6. There is no alternative for this.
7. But how could a busy person get the better of one who had nothing to do? 但大忙人怎能取得对一个无事可做有闲之人的优势呢?
8. Work has of late begun to suffer. 近来工作开始受影响。

VI. 说明标有序号的各词是形容词(包括形式上具有现在分词或过去分词词尾的形容词)、副词、还是分词,并指出其各自担任的句中成分:

The schooner (帆船) nearby(1) sleepily dropping(2) down the tide,

The little boat slack-towed(3) astern(4),

The hurrying(5) tumbling(6) waves, quick-broken(7) crests, slapping(8),

The strata of colored(9) clouds,

The long bar of maroon-tint (绛紫色) away solitary by itself,

The spread of purity (that) it lies motionless(10) in,

The horizon's edge, the flying(11) sea-crow,

The fragrance of salt marsh and shore mud,

—These became part of that child who went forth(12) every day,

And now goes, and will always(13) go forth(14) every day.

(Walt Whitman, *There Was a Child*)

## 第五章 形容词与副词之相异与相通

### 5.1 形容词与副词的同形异用

1) 有些形容词与副词同形,但句法功能不同。例如:

He arrived in the late afternoon. (adj.) 他在下午很晚的时间到了。

He arrived late in the afternoon. (adv.) 下午他迟到了。

late 还有一个带词尾 -ly 的形式 lately,但含义不同: Have you seen her lately? (lately = recently) 你最近见到她了吗?

We had a long wait. (adj.) 我们等了好长时间。

Did you wait long? (adv.) 你等了好长时间了吗?

They went by a fast train. (adj.) 他们乘快车去的。

Don't speak so fast. (adv.) 不要说得这么快。

The students had an early breakfast. (adj.) 学生们吃了一顿较早的早饭。

The students had breakfast early. (adv.) 学生们很早吃了早饭。

以上例句中的形容词皆为定语,修饰其后的名词;而副词都用作状语,修饰句中的动词。

形容词和副词的同形异用现象十分普遍。比较(左列为形容词或定语用法,右列为副词用法或状语用法):

airmail letter 航空信

to send it airmail 航空邮寄

an all day match 全天比赛

to play all day 成天玩

I'm all right. 我很好。

You've done all right. 你做得好。

a better book 较好的书	to speak better 更好地讲
a big house 大房子	to talk big 自夸, 吹牛
a cheap suit 便宜的套装	to buy it cheap 买得便宜
clean air 干净空气	to cut it clean 切割得很齐
a cold person 无情的人	to stop cold 突然全停
a dead stop 完全停止	to stop dead 站着一动不动
a dear banquet 费用高昂的宴会	to sell it dear 高价出售
a deep hole 深洞	to drink deep 痛饮
a direct train 直达火车	to go direct 一直走
a down town restaurant 闹市区餐馆	to go down town 去闹市区
a duty-free shop 免税商店	to buy it duty-free 免税购买
an early train 早车	to arrive early 早到
an easy book 易读的书	to go easy 从容地做
my everyday suit 我的日常服装	to work every day 天天上班
an extra blanket 多余的毯子	to charge extra 额外收费
a fair decision 公平的决定	to play fair 公平地比赛
a far country 远处的乡村	to go far 走远
on the farther side 在另外那边	to walk farther 走得更远些
a fast driver 开快车的司机	to drive fast 开快车
a fine pencil 削得尖细的铅笔	to cut it fine 修剪得很精细
a firm belief 坚定的信念	to hold firm 紧紧抓住
the first guest 最先来到的客人	First I'll wash. 首先我洗一洗。
a free ticket 免费票	to travel free 免费旅游
further question 进一步的问题	to walk further 继续步行
a hard work 难做的工作	to work hard 努力工作
home cooking 家庭烹饪	to go home 回家
the inside story 内情, 内幕	to stay inside 呆在里面
a kindly man 亲切的人	to act kindly 为人处事很和蔼

the last guest 最后的客人	to come last 最后到来
a late train 末班火车	to arrive late 晚到
long hair 长发	to stay long 呆的时间长
a low bridge 矮桥	to buy low 廉价购买
the past week 过去的那一周	to walk past 走过去
a quick worker 做事急速的人	to come quick 快来
a quiet evening 寂静的夜晚	to sit quiet 静坐
the right answer 正确的回答	to answer right 回答正确
sharp eyes 敏锐的眼睛	to look sharp 当心;赶快
a slow train 慢车	to go slow 慢走
a straight line 直线	to go straight 直走;改邪归正
I'm sure. 我肯定。	Sure, I'll do it. 当然,我会做的。
a through train 直达火车	to go through 通过
a wide room 宽敞的房间	to open wide 开得大些
a wrong guess 错误的猜想	to answer wrong 回答错误

## 2) 时间副词的同形异用

有些表示时间的形容词可以兼作副词,如 daily, fortnightly hourly, monthly, nightly, quarterly, weekly, yearly 等:

The new comers pay a weekly visit to the town. (adj.) 新来的人花一个星期的时间参观城镇。

My parents shop weekly in the town. (adv.) 我父母每周进城购物。

I got my monthly pay yesterday. (adj.) 今天我领了月工资。

The boss paid me monthly. (adv.) 老板每月付我工资。

## 3) 形容词的比较级和最高级的同形异用

有些形容词的比较级和最高级也可以用作副词,可相当以 -ly

结尾派生的副词前加 more, most 的比较级最高级形式:

She speaks clearer. (= She speaks more clearly.) 她讲得更清楚。

That girl speaks clearest of all. (= That girl speaks most clearly.) 所有的人当中那个女孩讲得最清楚。

这里的 clearer 和 clearest 分别是更规范说法 more clearly 和 most clearly 的变体, 实际应用中是可以接受的。又如:

It's easier said than done. 说起来容易做起来难。

Harry ran (the) slowest. 哈里跑得最慢。

The car went slower and slower. 汽车越走越慢。

形容词比较级的并列结构, 如 slower and slower 用作副词是正常的。虽然 speak clear 不算很规范, 但是 speak loud and clear 确属规范英语。

## 5.2 加-ly 构成副词的形容词

很多副词是由形容词加后缀-ly 构成的, 如: cheerful (高兴的), cheerfully (高兴地)。形容词和其相应的-ly 副词在句法结构上常常是对应的, 在句意上几乎没有或完全没有区别, 只是形容词和相应的副词分别适应各自的句法关系:

He liked Susan considerably. (= He liked Susan to a considerable extent.) 他曾相当喜欢苏珊。

She spoke to Jane sharply. (She spoke to Jane in a sharp manner.) 她对珍妮讲话的态度很刻薄。

He wrote frequently. (He wrote on frequent occasions.) 他经常写信。

Politically, it is not a good decision. (= From the political point

of view, it is not a good decision.) 从政治观点上看,这不是个妥善决定。

She visits frequently. (Her visits are frequent.) 她经常访问。

由形容词构成副词有以下规则:

1) 以辅音字母 + y 结尾的形容词构成副词时,通常将 y 变为 i, 再加 -ly, 如:

easy → easily          happy → happily

有的保留 -y, 直接加 -ly, 如: spry → spryly, wry → wryly

极少数词有以上两种拼法, 如: dry → drily / dryly, sly → slily / slyly

2) 以 -ll 结尾的形容词变为副词时, 只加 -y, 如: chill → chilly, full → fully。

3) 以辅音字母 + le 结尾的形容词变为副词时, 须把 -le 改为 -ly, 例如:

simple → simply          single → singly

able → ably              idle → idly

subtle → subtly

但也有例外, 如: whole → wholly, supple → supplely

4) 以 -ic 或 -ical 结尾的形容词变为副词时, 都用 -ically:

economic / economical → economically

heroic → heroically

domestic → domestically

tragic → tragically

但 public 的副词形式须是 publicly



5)以 -ary 结尾的形容词可以构成以 -arily 结尾的副词,例如:

secondary → secondarily

primary → primarily

后缀 -ly, 与 like (“像…样子”) 同源, 主要是加于动态形容词, 构成相应的副词, 例如:

cheerful → cheerfully

jealous → jealously

reasonable → reasonably

suspicious → suspiciously

而至今几种表示静态或类属的形容词, 如一些表大小、颜色、年龄等的形容词, 都不能在其后加 -ly 构成相应的副词, 如 big 不能派生为 bigly, red 不能派生为 redly, old 不能派生为 oldly 等。

### 5.3 非副词而以 -ly 结尾的形容词

-ly 后缀不仅是副词后缀, 用作形容词后缀的情况也不少。这里是“非副词而以 -ly 结尾的形容词”:

1) “名词 + ly” 的形容词: god (上帝) → godly (虔信的, 神圣的)  
home (家) → homely (家庭的, 朴素的)  
love (爱) → lovely (可爱的)

2) “形容词 + ly” 的形容词: like (同样的, 同类的) → likely  
kind (亲切的, 好心的) → kindly  
(亲切地; 作形容词指表现和蔼)

### 3) “时间名词 + -ly” 的形容词

这类形容词是在表示时间单位的名词之后 + -ly 构成, 表“every”之意。如: daily (= every day 每天), weekly (= every week 每星期)(参见 5.1, 2)

### 4) 词意与词根有紧密关系的 -ly 形容词。

这类形容词都表示“具有… 性质”之意。如:

woman (妇女)	womanly (像女人那样的)
man (男人)	manly (有男人气概的)
soldier (战士)	soldierly (战士般的)
father (父亲)	fatherly (慈父般的)
friend (朋友)	friendly (友好的)
coward (懦夫)	cowardly (懦弱的)
death (死亡)	deathly (致命的), deadly (致死的)

## 5.4 形容词可用作相应的带-ly 形式的副词

有些形容词也可以用作副词, 这时和其相应的 -ly 副词的句法功能无异, 同是担任状语。词义上也没有区别, 例如:

He drove slow. 他开车开得慢。

He drove slowly. 他开车开得慢。

They played the game clean. 他们规规矩矩地进行了这场比赛。

The knife cuts cleanly. 这把刀切东西切得很整齐。

She buys cheap. 她买得很便宜。(这种说法不算十分正式)

She buys cheaply. 她买得很便宜。

不带 -ly 的形式用作副词时,只能位于动词或者动词宾语之后,而 -ly 形式不受这种限制:

He drove the car into the garage slowly.

He slowly drove the car into the garage.

Slowly, he drove the car into the garage.

以上三句中的 slowly 可以置于句末,句中或句首。但下面的 slow 则不然:

可以说 He drove the car slow into the garage. 但不能说 \* He slow drove the car into the garage. 又如:

I paid dear(ly) for my mistake. 我为自己的错误付出了昂贵的代价。

Rather dearly I paid for my mistake. 我为自己的错误付出了相当昂贵的代价。

She loved him dear(ly). 她深深地爱过他。

She dearly loved him. 她深深地爱过他。

He lived deep(ly) in the woods. 他曾住在树林深处。

She was deeply moved by the song. 她被这首歌深深地打动。

## 5.5 容易弄混弄错的 high(ly), hard(ly), easy/easily, quick(ly), likely 等形容词或副词

1) 不带或带有 -ly 的副词形式,用法完全分家或几乎各异的情况:

Only by aiming high, can you be highly successful. “只有怀抱远大目标,你才能取得高度成就。”直译似乎不大通顺——“只有把目标定得很高,你才能是高度成功的。”该句中,high(高)是方式副词,修

饰表示运动的动名词 aiming。而 highly(高度)是度量副词,修饰表示属性的形容词 successful。

They work us too hard in this office. It's hardly the place for you to consider. “他们使我们在这个办事处工作得太辛苦。这里不应是你们考虑的地方。”句中 hard 是方式副词;hardly 是否定语气副词。

hardly 表示句子的否定语气特征。现代英语中 hardly 实已不再用作方式副词。虽然 RHD(1960)有例句 Our victory was hardly won. 而 F. T. Wood 的 *Current English Usage* (1982) 指出应该说成... hard-won。《汉英词典》(1995)就把“胜利来之不易”译成 Victory was hard-won. RWRT(1985)说“Hardly is no longer used as the adverbial form of the adjective hard.”(它已不再是形容词 hard 的副词形式)。WNWD(1972, 1994)则谨慎地在其释义之一: with difficulty 条前注明“Now Rare”(现用得稀少)。而 NOD(2001)更精确地在其第二义: harshly(严酷地)条前标明“Archaic”(古旧词义,已不通用)。

显然,能够“兼职”的词在某处属何词类是通过句中关系显示的。Words ran high. And high words were followed by hard blows. “争吵激烈起来。大吵大闹随之就大打出手。”前一 high 是副词,而后面 high 与 hard 都是形容词。

easy 兼任形容词与副词。作为副词的 easy 与副词 easily 也已几乎不能通用,被一般词典看作不同的两个词条:

We found the house quite easily.

(Wood; 不说 \* We found the house easy/quite easy.) 我们很容易就找到了那所房子。

More easily said than done.

Easier said than done. (RHD; 二词似此通用的情况极少) 说来容易做起来难。

Take it easy. (ib)(惯用语, 不说 \* Take it easily.) 不要放在心上。

Take it easy on him. (不说 \* Take it easily on him.) 对他不要太严厉。

Go easy (惯用语, 不说 \* easily) on the gin. You've put in much/far too much! (LDCE) (后一个 much 是指量代词, 代表 too much gin; 前一个 much 相当于 far, 是度量副词, 修饰 too much) 那杜松子酒喝得不要过量。你已经灌进去太多了。

Easy come, easy go. (谚)(财物)来得快, 去得急。为构成“头韵”把不带 -ly 的 easy 置于动词前面。这一谚语常用, 就不说 \* Easily come, easily go. 而 Light(ly)/Quick(ly) come, light(ly)/quick(ly) go. 全都可用。

2) 不带或带有 -ly 的副词形式, 仅仅有条件通用的情况:

Fast bind, fast find. 也可以说 Sure(ly)/Safe(ly) bind, sure(ly)/safe(ly) find. “放时系牢靠, 取时跑不了。”该英语句中, 形容词兼副词的 fast 不表示“快”, 而是表该词较早的意义“稳固”即 fixed(ly), 如在 fast asleep “沉睡”一语中。也正因为有此原义, fast 表示“快”时只用于持续运动(用于非持续运动、很快完成某事, 用形容词副词同形的 quick 或副词 quickly):

Walk faster/quicker. (LLAV) 快点儿走。不说 \* Come back fast. 要说 Come back quick/quickly. (LDCE) The women went quickly back. (LLAV) 正式说法用 quickly, 位置较灵活; 通俗说法用不带 -ly 的 quick, 一般置动词短语之后。

3) 即使带 -ly 也用作形容词的情况:

这样看来, 副词并不一定带有后缀 -ly。反过来说, 即使是形容词加 -ly, 也不一定就成为副词, 如 likely 主要用作形容词:

He is likely to call again this evening. (RWRT; 通常不说 \* He

will likely to call. . . ) 他很可能今晚再度来访。(相当于 It's likely/probable that he'll call again this evening. )

likely 通常仅在加上 quite/very/most/more/extremely 之类修饰语时,才用作副词,相当于 probably :

He will most likely call again this evening. 或 Most likely he'll call again. . . (RWRT) 极大可能,他今晚将再度来访。

More than likely it will rain. (RHD) 很有可能天要下雨。

4) 非 -ly 形式、兼任形容词和副词等词类的情况:

well 可以兼任形容词(与 good 异义)、方式副词、和语气副词。语气副词表示的是语气特征,即传达说话人对所述客观情况的主观态度:

Now they all felt well after their illness. (RWRT) 这时他们全都病愈,自觉身体很好了。

felt 是联系动词,well 是形容词表语“健康的”;比较 felt good after the party(ib) 参加了这一聚会,觉得很开心。

All is well that ends well. (谚语;前一 well 是形容词表语;后一 well 是副词状语) 结局好,就算全都好。

Well, perhaps you're right. (RHD) 得了,也许你对吧! (well 是语气副词,修饰全句,比 yes, all right, OK 多一层不肯定语气;比较前述 hardly 是否定语气副词,修饰谓语或全句。)

Well, you do surprise me! (ALD 认为该 well 转作了感叹词) 啊呀,你真吓了我一大跳!

## 5.6 形容词短语状语与副词短语状语的异同

形容词短语以形容词为中心词,加上各种修饰成分(介词短语、副词或动词不定式等)构成。在句中作状语,表原因、时间、方式或

伴随的情况等。可以置于句首,也可以置于句中或句末。其逻辑主语是句中主语。

### 1) 形容词 + 介词短语

通常,特定的形容词多需和特定的介词短语搭配,表示某种特定意义,如:

afraid of difficulties 害怕困难

busy with his work 忙于工作

famous for her poems 以她的诗而著名

keen on spectator sports 喜欢观赏激动人心的体育运动

good at English 擅长英语

Unhappy with the result, she returned to work. 因为对结果不满意,所以她重新投入工作。(表原因)

Anxious for a quick decision, the chairman called for a vote. 主席渴望迅速作出决定,所以要求投票。(表原因)

Afraid of difficulties, they prefer to take the easy road. 他们因怕困难,所以宁愿走好走的路。(表原因)

Angry at everybody, Mr Dawson left abruptly. 道森先生因为生大家的气,突然走了。(表原因)

Harry welcomed Margaret, glad of her company. 哈里欢迎玛格丽特,高兴与她为伴。(表伴随)

He approached us full of apologies. 他满脸歉意地向我们走来。(表方式)

Parallel with the building of thermal power stations, provision is made for the construction of hydro-electric station. 在修建热电厂的同时,也在做修建水电站的准备。(表时间)

### 2) 形容词 + 动词不定式

Glad to accept, the boy nodded his agreement. 男孩子高兴接受,

所以点头同意。(表原因)

Modest, unassuming, easy to approach, the Premier soon put everyone there completely at ease. 总理那么谦逊、随和、易于接近,使大家很快就不紧张了。(伴随情况)

Eager to improve farming conditions, they tried out this new crop on a large area. 他们急于改进农业条件,就大面积地试种了这种庄稼。(表原因)

### 3) 副词 + 形容词

Much interested, he agreed to give it a try. 他很感兴趣,同意试一试。(表原因)

Rather nervous, the man opened the letter. 那人非常担心,急忙拆开了信。(表伴随)(= The man, rather nervous, opened the letter. / The man opened the letter, rather nervous. / The man who was rather nervous opened the letter.)

这类形容词短语作状语在意义上与主语紧密关联,其逻辑主语即句子的主语。从以上例子也可以看出这类短语在句中的位置较为灵活。

## 5.7 独立形容词短语结构担任状语

独立形容词短语结构常由“名词/代词 + 形容词及其修饰语”构成,在句中作状语,表伴随的情况,例如:

He entered the room, his nose red with cold. 他走进屋来鼻子已冻得通红。

He sat in the front row, his mouth half open, his head thrust forward so as not to miss any word. 他坐在前排,口半张着,头往前倾,惟恐听漏一个字。



The old man sat down, his face pale with pain. 老头坐下来, 由于痛苦脸色发白。

这种结构相当于一个从句, 形容词前面的名(代)词相当于从句的主语(即后面部分的逻辑主语), 后面形容词短语相当于从句中的表语, 中间可以解释为省略了动词 be 的某种形式。在译成汉语时, 或译成一个状语, 或译成一个并列的句子。在口语中这种结构用得很少。

She looked remarkably well, her skin clean and smooth. (her skin was clean and smooth.) 她看上去相当健康, 皮肤洁净平滑。

I do not wish to describe his assertions, some of them offensive. (some of them are offensive) 我不想评述他那些言辞, 其中有些是咄咄逼人的。

有时候, 这种独立结构很像“with + 分词宾语 + (形容词)宾补”结构, 不仅句意不变, 而且句法功能也一样, 说明伴随情况。译成汉语时, 可译成状语, 或译成并列句。例如:

She looked at him expectantly, her eyes full of excitement and curiosity (= with her eyes full of excitement and curiosity). 她期待地看着他, 眼睛里充满了激动和好奇。

英语中还有一种略去从句主语和联系动词而保留形容词的结构, 由连词“whether, if, when, though, although 等 + 形容词”构成。例如:

Whether right or wrong, he always comes off worst in argument. (whether he is right or wrong) 无论对错, 在辩论中他总是输得最惨。

One should avoid taking a trip abroad in August if possible. (if it is possible) 如果可能的话, 你应该避免在 8 月份去国外旅行。

We can meet again tomorrow, if possible. (if it is possible) 如果必要, 我们明天可以再次见面。

Although not yet six month old, she was able to walk without support. (Although she is not yet six months old) 虽然出生还不到6个月, 他就能自己走路了。

When possible, I'll take notes for you. (When it is possible) 如果可能的话, 我会为你作记录的。

If wet, the pipe won't give you a good smoke. (If it is wet) 如果潮湿的话, 用烟斗抽烟就费劲。

It has little taste, unless hot. (unless it is hot) 除非辣一点, 否则没什么味道。

实际上, 这种似有省略的状语结构可只是分词短语、介词短语等。例如:

While at college, he was a prominent member of the dramatic society. 在上大学期间, 他在戏剧团体中就很突出。

Relying on our own efforts, we overcame all the difficulties. 依靠自己的力量, 我们把这些困难都克服了。

They stood there for an hour watching the game. 他们在那儿站了一个钟头观看比赛。

Please fill in the form, giving your name, address, etc. 请把这份表格填一下, 写下你的姓名、住址等。

Having worked among them for many years, he knows them very well. 由于他在他们中间工作多年, 对他们很熟悉。

Tonight, lit by countless electric lights, all the halls were as bright as day. 今晚, 在无数的电灯的照耀下, 所有的大厅都亮得如白昼。

Built in 1192, the bridge is over 800 years old. 这座桥建于1192

年,已经有 800 多年的历史了。

He is a responsible man in spite of his shortcomings. 他尽管有缺点,却是一个负责的人。

## Exercise 5

### I. 选择带有或不带-ly 的副词形式填空:

1. Sorry I didn't turn up — I \_\_\_\_\_ forgot. (clean, cleanly)
2. I can't see \_\_\_\_\_ without my glasses. (clear, clearly)
3. You can speak \_\_\_\_\_ in front of George — he knows everything. (free, freely)
4. You can eat \_\_\_\_\_ in my restaurant whenever you like. (free, freely)
5. I'm working very \_\_\_\_\_ this year. (hard, hardly)
6. I've \_\_\_\_\_ got any clean clothes left. (hard, hardly)
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ recommend it. (high, highly)
8. He can jump really \_\_\_\_\_. (high, highly)
9. I hate arriving \_\_\_\_\_. (late, lately)
10. I haven't been to the theatre much \_\_\_\_\_. (late, lately)

### II. 选用括号里的副词或形容词改写句子:

Example:

They will reach their house very late at night because their father is a driver. (probably, slow)

They will **probably** reach their house very late at night because their father is a **slow** driver.

1. She always comes to school at seven-thirty because she is a riser. (punctually, early)

2. They climbed up the steep slope until they reached the peak of the mountain. (carefully, towering)
3. He won't be returning to his hometown because he is occupied by his job. (remote, terribly)
4. She packed up all her things and caught a train out of the city. (hurriedly, fast)
5. He searched the banks of the river until he found some clay. (patiently, hard)

### Ⅲ. 改正用错的形容词或副词, 使用正确的副词形式:

1. I am almost ready; my paper is near finished.
2. The smart dressed women looked out of place in the tavern.
3. The dog crept closely to me.
4. He held the bat closely to his chest and then hit the ball highly into the air.
5. Sit tightly and don't be persuaded by him.

### Ⅳ. 说明标有序号的形容词担任的句中的什么成分(前位定语、后位定语、表语、状语、宾语补语), 标有序号的也可能是和形容词同形的副词, 如果是这样, 指出该副词担任的成分和所修饰的词语:

She drew another match against the wall: it was again light, and in the luster there stood her old grandmother, so bright(1) and radiant(2), so mild(3), and with such an expression of love.

"Grandmother!" cried the little(4) one.

"Oh, take me with you! You go away when the match burns out; you vanish like the warm(5) stove, like the delicious(6) roast goose, and like the magnificent(7) Christmas tree!"

And she rubbed the whole(8) bundle of matches quickly against the wall, for she wanted to be quite sure(9) of keeping her grandmother near(10) her.

And the matches gave such a brilliant(11) light that it was brighter(12) than at noon-day.

Never formerly had the grandmother been so beautiful(13) and so tall(14).

She took the little(15) maiden, on her arm, and both flew in brightness and in joy so high(16), so very high, and then above was neither cold, nor hunger, nor anxiety...

(H. Anderson, *The Little Match Girl*)

## 第六章 形容词与分词之相异与相通

### 6.1 现在分词兼形容词

某些分词,包括现在分词 v-ing 和过去分词 v-ed,有时候具有形容词的特征,也和形容词一样,在句子中用作名词或代词的修饰成分。有些完全形容词化的分词可以有形容词的比较级结构,能用 very, too 等程度副词来修饰。

1) 现在分词转作形容词在句中可以用作定语:

This time they achieved more satisfying results. 这次他们取得了更加令人满意的结果。

Smith is the most interesting man in the village. 史密斯是村子里最有趣的人。

另外,现在分词转作形容词还可以构成合成词作前置定语。

These are oil-bearing crops. 这是些油料作物。

He spoke with fine-sounding words. 他用动听的言词演讲。

这里要注意作定语用的现在分词和动名词作定语用时的区别。一般说来,现在分词都表示所修饰人或事物的运动,例如: walking robot = robot that is walking; 而动名词则表示被修饰名词的用途或属性,例如: waiting room = room which is used for waiting。又如:

现在分词 + 名词

working people 劳动人民  
walking tractor 手扶拖拉机  
sleeping child 酣睡的孩子

动名词 + 名词

working method 工作方法  
walking stick 手杖  
sleeping car 卧车

flying fish 飞鱼

flying suit 飞行衣

an adjoining room 相连接的房间

a living room 客厅

standing room (戏院, 体育馆等的) 站位

2) 现在分词转作形容词可以用作表语, 多描绘非人主语的属性。例如:

His views were very surprising. 他的观点很惊人。

The dish smells inviting. 这道菜香味怡人。

The problem is quite pressing. 这问题很紧迫。

也可以描绘人之属性:

The teacher/lecture is boring. (LDCE) (95 版) 这位老师的讲课/讲座很乏味。

The students are bored. (LDCE) (95 版) 学生们很烦。

-ing 形式作表语时, 要和“be + -ing 形式”构成的进行时态区分开来。如果 -ing 形式后有直接宾语出现时, 很明显这是分词构成进行时态, 例如:

His views were alarming his audience. 他的观点使听众感到不安。

They are frightening the pupils. 他们在吓唬小学生。

He is insulting me. 他在侮辱我。

如果 -ing 分词形式前面有强化副词 very 来修饰它, 这就明确表示现在分词已转作形容词(作表语或定语)。如:

His views were very alarming.

They were very frightening.

在后无宾语前无 very 情况下, 靠句义也能辨明句中 -ing 形式的功能:

His greatest pleasure was traveling. (动名词表语) 过去, 他最大的乐趣是旅游。

He spoke in a frightening manner. (现在分词定语) 他说话的样子令人害怕。

## 6.2 过去分词兼形容词

1) 过去分词(-ed 分词)可以转作形容词。

过去分词转成的形容词的特性和句法功能与现在分词转成的形容词基本相同, 所不同的是现在分词常带有主动与进行的含义, 而过去分词常带有被动与完成的含义。比较:

现在分词用作形容词	过去分词用作形容词
boiling water 沸腾的水	boiled water 煮开了的水
a charming girl 迷人的姑娘	a charmed girl 中了魔法的姑娘
exciting news 振奋人心的消息	an excited audience 兴奋的听众
an interesting story 有趣的故事	an interested look 感兴趣的表情
a pleasing voice 悦耳的嗓音	a pleased look 满意的表情
a terrifying story 令人恐怖的故事	a terrified woman 感到惊恐的妇女

但是不及物动词的过去分词却无被动意义, 只带有完成的意义。  
如:

the escaped prisoner (逃犯 = the prisoner who has escaped)

the departed guests (离去的客人 = the guests who have departed)

the faded curtains (褪色的窗帘 = the curtains which have faded)

the retired manager (退休了的经理 = the manager who has retired)



fallen leaves (落叶 = leaves that have fallen)

the risen sun (升起的太阳 = the sun that has risen)

2) 过去分词转作形容词在句中可以用作定语和表语。

用作定语:

The offended man is shouting. 那个生气的男人在大声喊叫。

The child gave a cry and with outstretched arms ran forward. 那孩子叫了一声, 伸开两臂向前跑去。

Did you pay a visit to the tomb of the unknown soldier? 你去看了无名英雄之墓吗?

用作表语:

The workers soon became tired. 工人们很快就累了。

The spectators were horrified. 观众们被吓得惊恐失色。

We were excited to hear the news. 听到那消息我们很激动。

The teacher's lecture was three hours long and he felt very bored. 教师的讲课长达三小时, 他觉得非常腻烦。

3) 常见的过去分词转成的形容词很多, 这里列举部分常见者:

alarmed 引起警觉的

amazed 十分吃惊的

amused 被逗乐的

annoyed 使恼怒的

appalled 使惊骇的

ashamed 惭愧的

astonished 使惊讶的

balanced 平衡的

bewildered 困惑的

boiled 煮沸的

bored 厌倦的

celebrated 著名的

civilized 文明的

conceited 自高自大的

confused 混乱的

contented 满意的

depressed 沮丧的

disappointed 失望的

disgusted 感到厌恶的

distinguished 卓越的

distressed 痛苦的  
educated 受过教育的  
embarrassed 局促不安的  
excited 激动的  
exhausted 用完的  
fascinated 神魂颠倒的  
frightened 受惊的  
horrified 恐惧的  
hurried 匆忙的  
irritated 被激怒的  
interested 感兴趣的  
limited 受限制的

married 已婚的  
moved 受感动的  
noted 著名的  
pleased 高兴的  
relaxed 放松的  
reserved 留作专用的  
satisfied 满意的  
shocked 受惊的  
surprised 惊奇的  
terrified 害怕的  
tired 疲劳的  
worried 担心

#### 4) -ed 复合形容词

有一类复合形容词是由副词 + -ed 分词构成的,当这类复合形容词中的 -ed 分词单独存在时,与形容词有所不同,一般不能在名词词组中作前置修饰语,但在这类复合形容词中,它就具有形容词的特征,具有形容词的一般功能,能用作前置修饰语。这类常见复合形容词有:badly-behaved 行为不正的, badly-built 建造差的, far-fetched 勉强的, half-baked 半生不熟的, newly-born 新生的, newly-invented 新发明的, well-behaved 行为端正的, well-built 建造良好的, well-dressed 穿着整齐的, 等等。

#### 5) -ed 纯形容词

还有一些 -ed 形式的词被用作定语或表语,这些词形似 -ed 分词,其实不然,它们无相应的动词形式,而纯属形容词,但带有被动含义。例如:

The unexpected results happened. 没有预料到的结果出现了。

The results were unexpected. 这些结果是没有预料到的。

He was naked to the waist. 他上半身赤裸着。

同类 -ed 形容词还有：

talented 天资高的, diseased 患了病的, uncalled-for (言行的) 不必要的, undreamed of 做梦也没想到的, unexampled 无先例的, unexecuted 未执行的, unfenced 没有防卫的, unexposed 未曝光的, unfinished 未完成的, unexpressed 未明说的, unforced 非强迫的, wicked 邪恶的, 等等。

除了上述 -ing 和 -ed 分词转化来的分词形容词之外, 其他以 -ful, -ous, -some 或 -able/-ible 结尾的形容词中有些也有主动意义与被动意义之分, 比较:

主动意义	被动意义
contemptuous 轻蔑的	contemptible 可鄙的
credulous 轻信的	credible 可信的
dangerous 危险的	endangered 遭到危险的
desirous 想望的	desirable 值得想望的
delightful 令人高兴的	delighted 感到高兴的
frightful 令人害怕的	frightened 受惊的
harmful 有害的	harmed 受害的
respectful 尊敬人的	respectable 值得尊敬的
satisfactory 令人满意的	satisfied 感到满意的
shameful 可耻的	ashamed 感到惭愧
tiresome 令人厌倦的	tired 感到厌倦的
troublesome 令人烦恼的	troubled 感到忧虑的

#### 6) -ed 形容词 和 -ed 谓语过去分词的区别

过去分词转成的形容词作表语时, 要和“be + 过去分词”构成的

被动语态区别开来, 区别方法如下:

i. 当分词后面跟了“by + 施动者”的施动短语时, 很多情况下是构成了被动谓语, 如:

She is appreciated by her students. 她受到学生们的赏识。

He was misunderstood by his parents. 他被父母误解了。

但在过去分词作形容词的这种用法中, 有时候也出现用表示施动者的 by 短语的句子, 例如:

She seems extremely elated by her success. 由于胜利她似乎非常高兴。

因而, 不能把带施动短语“by...”看作是判断被动语态的不变标准。

ii. 一般说来, 如果过去分词前面可用程度副词 very, quite 等度量副词予以修饰, 那么, 很明显它就是过去分词转成的形容词表语, 用以描述主语的状态, 而不构成被动语态, 如:

Henry seemed very interested in and keen on linguistics. 亨利似乎对语言学很感兴趣, 热衷于此道。

We feel rather encouraged and content. 我们感到很受鼓舞, 相当满意。

### 7) un + -ed 形容词

加前缀 un- 构成的动词不多, 如: undo, uncover。但由前缀 un- + ed 过去分词构成的形容词很多:

unfounded 没有事实根据的

ungifted 缺乏才能的

unheard 前所未闻

uninhabited 无人居住的

unfurnished 无装备的

unguarded 没有防备的

unimpressed 无印记的

uninjured 未受伤害的

unintended 不是存心的  
uninterrupted 不间断的  
unmixed 没有掺杂的  
unnumbered 数不清的  
unopened 没拆开的  
unpolished 没有磨光的  
unprized 不被珍视的  
unrecognized 未被认可的  
unreserved 无保留的  
unsettled 不稳定的  
unsolved 未解决的  
unsupported 未经证实的  
untouched 未触动过的  
unvoiced 未用言语表达出来的  
unwashed 未洗涤的

uninterested 不感兴趣的  
uninvited 未被邀请的  
unnamed 未命名的  
unoccupied (房屋)没人住的  
unpaved 未铺砌的  
unpracticed 未经练习的  
unqualified 无资格的  
unremarked 未被注意的  
unsecured 无担保的  
unskilled 不熟练的  
unsuited 不合适的  
unsuspected 未受怀疑的  
untried 未经试验的  
unwarned 未受警告的

### 6.3 完全形容词化的 exciting 等 -ing 形式

一些 -ing 形式也可完全当作形容词使用。这类形容词只能用作形容词,而较少用作现在分词构成谓语。这类形容词具有形容词的主要特征,在句中担当定语或表语,可用 very, so, too 等度量副词修饰,可有比较级和最高级形式,已经完全成了形容词。例如:

We watched a very exciting woman football match. 我们观看了一场非常激动人心的女足比赛。(不表示“正在激动人心”,因而不构成进行时态谓语)

The match was really exciting. 比赛的确令人激动。

That is the most boring lecture I have ever attended. 那是我所听到的最乏味的一次讲座。

The story is so interesting that I didn't notice his coming into the room. 故事太有趣了,我都不知道他进了房间。

His examination results are too disappointing to believe. 他的考试成绩太令人扫兴了,都不敢相信。(不表示“正在扫兴”,所以不构成进行时态谓语。)

根据句义与上下文,不难分清哪个是 -ing 形容词表语,哪个是表示运动进行状态的以及构成谓语的现在分词:

a typing boy 打字的男孩(typing 表示“正在打字的”男孩)

You weren't boring me. On the contrary, you're interesting me frightfully. (Galsworthy) 那时你没使我感到厌烦,相反,使我感到非常有意思。

完全形容词化的还有:

amusing (故事等) 好玩的,有趣的

charming 迷人的,可爱的

disappointing 让人失望的,扫兴的

embarrassing 令人局促不安的

fascinating 迷人的,使人神魂颠倒的

missing 缺少的,行踪不明的

promising 有希望的

shocking 令人震惊的

tempting 令人心动的

annoying 使人烦恼

daring 胆大的,勇敢的

discouraging 令人沮丧的

encouraging 令人鼓舞的

inviting 诱人的,有魅力的

misleading 误导的

puzzling 令人困惑的

surprising 惊人的,意外的

加否定前缀 un- 的也不少,如:

unhesitating 毫不犹豫的

uninviting 不诱人的

unpromising 没有希望的

unsatisfying 不能令人满意的

uninteresting 没意思的

unpleasing 使人不愉快的

unremitting 坚持不懈的

## 6.4 -ed 中元音发音的 learned 等过去分词形容词

-ed 的元音在动词的过去式或过去分词中不发音, -ed 也不成音节, 但有些 -ed 过去分词已转作形容词, 词尾 -ed 中元音字母 e 按旧时英语词尾发音为 / i /, 所以 -ed 就读成一个音节 / -id /, 比较:

The man was dogged /'dɒgd/ by misfortunes all his life. (过去分词构成谓语) 那个人一生都为厄运所困。

They resume their dogged /'dɒgid/ efforts in the struggle. (形容词作定语, 顶替省略的名词从句) 他们继续顽强的斗争。

She has learned /lə:nd/ 1000 English words so far. (过去分词构成谓语) 至今她已学到 1000 个英文单词。

He is learned /'lə:nid/ in Russian. (形容词表语) 他精通俄语。

He has aged. /eidʒd/ (过去分词构成谓语) 他上了年纪。

He is an aged /'eidʒid/ man. (形容词) 他是位老人。

Our blessed /'blesid/ father once told us a story about his expedition in the Arctic. (形容词) 我们已进了天堂的父亲曾给我们讲过他北极探险的故事。

He loved adventure, but he was not blessed /blest/ with worldly goods. (过去分词构成谓语) 他喜欢冒险, 但他无幸拥有世俗的财物。

有一些 -ed 形式的形容词, “-ed”可以读作音节, 也可不读作音节, 即其中的“-e”可以发音, 也可以不发音, 例如, cursed 作形容词用时, 既可读作 /kə:st/, 也可读作 /'kə:sid/, 又如:

The floods are a cursed (/kə:st/或/'kə:sid/) nuisance. 洪水是可恨的祸害。

She is cursed /kə:st/ by even her own friends. 她甚至受到自己

朋友的诅咒。

## 6.5 分词形容词前修饰语 much 与 very 等度量副词

### 1) 分词前用 much 还是用 very 修饰?

有些语法书上说, 在过去分词之前或后, 应该用 only, much 代替 very。事实上, 这要看具体情况。有的过去分词已转用作形容词, 多表示状态或品质, 而不是行为, 这时候就要用 very 修饰, 而不用 much。例如:

a very frightened animal 非常害怕的动物

a very tired child 很疲倦的孩子

a very complicated problem 相当复杂的问题

但是当过去分词仍指运动, 即实际并未转作形容词时, 则要用 much 或 very much 修饰, 例如:

Britain's trade position has been much/very much weakened by inflation. (very much 也可置过去分词后) 由于通货膨胀, 英国的贸易地位被大大地削弱了。

### 2) 分词保留表运动意义用 (very) much 等度量副词修饰:

You seem very much annoyed. 你像是(为什么事)很苦恼。

He was very much annoyed by interruption. 他被打断, 感到很不快。

When Victoria crossed the frontier, she was much excited. 维多利亚越过边境时感到非常激动。

This is a book interesting me very much. 这是一本使我很感兴趣的书。

You could not imagine how much he was surprised at hearing the news. 你想不到他听到这消息时感到多么惊讶。



I was not so much shocked as astonished. 我并没有被吓坏,只是感到很惊奇。

分词不再表运动意义,已转作形容词用 very 等度量副词修饰:

His tone was very annoyed. 他的语气招人讨厌。

She wore a very worried look. 她带着很苦恼的表情。

He is very interested in the subject. 他对这个问题很感兴趣。

There was a very surprised look on his face. 他脸上有种很惊奇的神色。

He looked up at me, very surprised. 他很惊讶的样子,抬头望望我。

过去分词之后跟有 by... 施动短语时,如果施动者指人(by somebody),要用 only, much 等修饰:

Attic taste is much celebrated by poets. 古雅典韵味被诗人们大加颂扬。

The Government was much harassed by questions. 该内阁班子被所提问题弄得很窘。

如果施动者不指人,可用 much 或 very 修饰。不带 by... 施动短语的被动句中过去分词也可有形容词化的趋势,用 very 或 much 修饰:

We were all (very) much shocked by the news about Tony. 托尼的消息使我们全都非常震惊。

A very harassed official appeared. 这时出现了一个颇有窘态的官员。

I am very pleased with what he has done. 对他所办的事,我非常满意。

The car was much/very damaged. (very 用于非正式语)那车严重破损。

His manner towards her is much/very changed. 他对她的态度大大改变了。

## 6.6 分词形容词后的 by, with 等介词用法

### 1) 过去分词形容词和介词的搭配。

和许多形容词一样,不少过去分词(特别是转作形容词者)之后也可以跟“介词+名词/动名词”,构成过去分词短语,这些介词主要有: about, at, by, for, from, of, on, to, with 等:

absorbed in	专心致志于...
accustomed to	习惯于...
amazed at	(因...而)大感惊讶
amused at/by/with	以...为乐
annoyed at/by/with(sb.)	生...的气
delighted at/with/by	因...而高兴
disgusted at	对...感到厌烦
excited at	对...感到兴奋
interested in	对...感兴趣
involved in	热衷于...
married to (sb.)	与...(人)结婚
pleased about/with/at	对...高兴/满意
surprised at	对...感到惊讶
tired of	厌倦于...
used to	习惯于...
worried about	担心...

和某些形容词一样,某些 -ed 形容词通常要与特定的介词搭配,

表达特定的含义：

They are all skilled at/in computer. (善于…) 他们都擅长计算机。

The girl is ashamed of what she said. (为…感到惭愧) 女孩为自己的话而感到惭愧。

I'm tired of your stupid conversation. (对…感到厌烦) 你愚蠢的谈话我听厌了。

A woman is absorbed in taking down the data shown on the instrument. (全神贯注于…) 一位妇女正全神贯注地记录仪表上的数据。

He quickly became accustomed to the local food. (习惯于做…, 等于 be used to sth./doing sth.) 他很快吃惯了当地的饭。

当然, 不同介词的搭配有其不同的意义：

He felt embarrassed at such a question. (因…而感到不好意思) 他为提出这样的问题而感到不好意思。

Susan seemed embarrassed by(/with) the question. (因…而受困) 苏珊似乎被此问题所困。

He was involved in a dancing crowd. (卷入…; 一心做…) 他卷入了边吼边舞的人群之中。

He was involved with the Mafia. (与某人混在一起) 他和黑手党有牵连。

I was annoyed at/by his impudence. (生…事/物的气) 他厚颜无耻的态度让我很生气。

She was annoyed with him because he was late. (生…人的气) 因为他迟到她生他的气。

## 2) “分词形容词 + 介词短语”搭配举例

从以上可以看出,同一个过去分词形容词有时候可以后跟不同的介词短语,通常是习惯搭配,这是因为不同的含义要求不同的介词与之搭配。例如:

concerned,当指“与…有关”或“关于…”时,后跟 with... 短语:

We are not concerned with that matter. 我们与那个问题无关。

当指“担心…”时,通常后跟 about:

He seems to be making little progress and the doctor is very concerned about him. 他几乎不见好转,所以大夫非常关注他。

该词后也经常跟 for...:

She felt very concerned for the child's safety. 她很为孩子的安全担心。

但 concerned for 更常指“为…担心而且要确保”,例如:

A good employer should be concerned for the welfare of his workers. 一个好雇主应该关心工人福利。

如果 concerned 意为“意指…”或“涉及…”时,那么后跟介词 in, 如:

More than one person has been concerned in his affairs. 不只一个人牵连到这件事。

These two men were concerned in the business. 这两个人参与了那个交易。

又如 pleased, 当意指“(对某人)高兴,满意”时,后跟 with... 短语:

The boss is very pleased with you. 老板对你非常满意。

当该词指“(对某事、物)满意,高兴”时,后跟 with/about/at... 短语。例如:

She was pleased with her new room. 她对新房间是满意的。

I wasn't very pleased with / at / about my exam results. 我对自己的考试结果感到不满意。

## Exercise 6

### I. 用适当的分词形式的形容词(包括复合-ing/-ed型形容词)填空:

1. This time they achieved more \_\_\_\_\_ results. (satisfy)
2. Smith is the most \_\_\_\_\_ doctor in the hospital. (experience)
3. I shall be \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you at the airport. (delight)
4. The film was very \_\_\_\_\_. (amuse)
5. You have been very \_\_\_\_\_ in setting up this firm. (enterprise)
6. The man seemed deeply \_\_\_\_\_. (offend)
7. His children must be \_\_\_\_\_. (down heart)
8. His lung is \_\_\_\_\_. (disease)
9. His views were very \_\_\_\_\_. (alarm)
10. All his friends are \_\_\_\_\_. (talent)

### II. 选择适当的分词形式形容词填空:

1. (tearing, torn)

He wears that old, \_\_\_\_\_ shirt wherever he goes because he doesn't have another one.

She heard a \_\_\_\_\_ noise as she got up from the chair and saw that her shirt was caught on a protruding nail.

2. (annoying, annoyed)

He had an \_\_\_\_\_ look on his face when he came out of the

manager's office.

Those men make very \_\_\_\_\_ sounds when they eat their meals.

3. (escaping, escaped)

The police gave chase to the \_\_\_\_\_ snatch-thief and caught him in an alley.

The \_\_\_\_\_ tiger gave everyone a scare before it was recaptured.

4. (closing 分词兼动名词, closed)

When she saw the \_\_\_\_\_ door, she didn't know how to attract the attention of the people inside the house.

It was almost \_\_\_\_\_ time when we reached the shopping complex, and so we couldn't buy much.

5. (interesting, interested)

He might grow up to be an engineer because he seems very \_\_\_\_\_ in machines and engines.

Our uncle taught us an \_\_\_\_\_ game of cards last night.

### Ⅲ. 不改变句子的意思, 用适当的分词形式形容词改写句子:

1. His face was framed in a great beard. (bearded)

2. The newspaper reported all the details of the case. (detailed)

3. Conflicts often arise between countries that are neighbors.  
(neighboring)

4. We live in an ancient town with a great wall round it. (walled)

5. Dresses with designs of flowers on them are no longer in fashion. (flowered)

IV. 说明以下文字中标有序号的分词和形容词的功用,分词是用来构成谓语还是用作定语或状语或补语,形容词是担任定语、表语还是担任状语:

Alex Haley got a rejection letter(退稿信) once a week for four years as a budding(1) writer.

Later in his career, Alex was ready(2) to give up on book *Roots* and himself. (放弃《根》并自尽)

After nine years on the project, he felt inadequate(3) to the task and was ready(4) to throw himself off a freighter(货轮) in the middle of the Pacific Ocean.

As he was standing(5) at the back of the ship, looking at the wake and preparing(6) to plunge into the ocean, he heard the voices of all his ancestors saying(7):

“You go and do what you got to do because they are all up there watching(8). Don't give up, trying(9) as the job is. You can do it exerting(10) yourself. We are counting(11) on you.”

In the subsequent(12) weeks the final(13) draft of *Roots* poured out of him.

(J. Canfield, *Chicken Soup for the Soul*)

## 第七章 形容词的两种比较级 最高级形式

英语中大多数形容词都能用于比较。比较可分为三种情况：原级比较, 较高/较低级比较, 和最高级比较。可比形容词的原形称为原级 (Positive/Absolute degree), 它们各有其比较级 (comparative degree), 和最高级 (superlative degree)。比较级和最高级各有规则的为形式和不规则的形式。

### 7.1 规则的比较级和最高级形式

规则的比较级和最高级各有两种构成形式：一是加词尾形式, 即在形容词原级上加词尾构成, 比较级加 -er, 最高级加 -est; 二是加助词形式, 即加 more 构成比较级, 加 most 构成最高级。

形容词比较级和最高级的有两种规则形式, 可示例如下:

原级	比较级	最高级
clean	cleaner	cleanest
big	bigger	biggest
nice	nicer	nicest
gay	gayer	gayest
tidy	tidier	tidiest
foolish	more foolish	more foolish
beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
important	more important	most important



### 1) -er, -est 词尾型

i. 大多数单音节形容词在词尾直接加 -er 构成比较级, 加 -est 构成最高级。这类词还有: clean, cold, cool, great, hard, high, low, neat, new, short, small, thick, weak 等等。

ii. 许多单音节形容词是以一个元音字母加一个辅音字母结尾的, 如: big, fat, sad, thin, wet 等等, 这些词的比较级的构成是, 先双写这个辅音字母, 后加 -er 构成: bigger, fatter, sadder, thinner, wetter 构成比较级。最高级的构成是, 先双写这个辅音字母, 后加 -est 构成: biggest, fattest, saddest, thinnest, wettest。

有少数以双写辅音字母结尾的单音节形容词的比较级和最高级如同上 i, 其后直接加 -er 构成比较级, 加 -est 构成最高级, 如:

tall	taller	tallest
full	fuller	fullest
small	smaller	smallest

iii. 许多以哑音 -e 结尾的单音节形容词, 如 wide 这类形容词只需在原级后加 -r 构成比较级 wider /'waɪdə/, 加 -st 构成最高级 widest /'waɪdist/。这类形容词还有 fine, large, late, nice, safe, strange 等等。

iv. 有些双音节形容词以辅音字母加 -y 结尾, 构成比较级和最高级时, 先变 -y 为 i, 然后加 -er 构成比较级, 加 -est 构成最高级。如: early, earlier, earliest。这类形容词还有 busy, dirty, dry, easy, empty, funny, heavy, holy, pretty, ready, sleepy, tidy 等。

但要注意单音节词 shy 不属此类, 其比较级为 shyer, 最高级为 shyest。另外, 以元音字母加 -y 结尾的少数几个单音节形容词, 其比较级和最高级直接在词尾加 -er, -est, 如 gay, gayer, gayest。

v. 此外还有某些双音节形容词的比较级和最高级形式也是规则的, 如 narrow, narrower, narrowest, 这样的词还有 clever, common, gentle, simple 等(详见 7.3)。

## 2) more 和 most 助词型

部分双音节形容词和三音节以上的形容词要分别在原级前面加助词 more 构成比较级, 加助词 most 构成最高级. 如:

interesting, more interesting, most interesting

important, more important, most important

attractive, more attractive, most attractive

注意: 形容词的最高级在实际应用时, 其助词 most 之前须加定冠词 the, 例如:

In old folk tales the youngest of the family is always the most successful. 在古老的民间故事中, 家里最小的孩子总是最成功的。

3) 以 -ful, -less 或 -re 结尾的形容词一般加助词 more 构成比较级, 加 most 构成最高级, 例如:

doubtful, more doubtful, most doubtful

careful, more careful, most careful

useful, more useful, most useful

careless, more careless, most careless

obscure, more obscure, most obscure

用这种方法构成比较级和最高级的形容词还有: (un)certain, (in)correct, (in)famous, foolish, (in)frequent, modern, (ab)normal 等等。

复合形容词(compound adjective)(见 3.9)也可以构成比较级和最高级, 是采用 -er 和 -est 形式, 还是助词 more, most 形式, 要根据作

为组成成分的形容词(或副词)所属的比较级、最高级构成法,例如:

hard-working, harder-working/more hard working

well-made, better-made/more well-made

bad-tempered, worst-tempered

(well, bad 的比较级、最高级属不规则形式,见下节)

有些复合形容词由于组成部分关系紧密,不容许在组成部分之间插入-er/ -est,因此,通常只用加助词 more 和 most 的构成法,例如:

more up-to-date book (更时髦的书)

the most up-to-date book (最时髦的书)

the most far-fetched argument (最强词夺理的争辩)

the most short-sighted policy(目光最短浅的政策)

## 7.2 不规则的比较级最高级形式

### 1) 比较级最高级的不规则形式

有少数最常用的形容词的比较级和最高级的形式是不规则的,即不同于 7.1 中所述的形容词后加-er, -est 的构成法。这类形容词的比较级和最高级词干(stem)与原级词干不同:

原级	比较级	最高级
good	better	best
well	better	best
bad	worse	worst
little	less	least
much	more	most

well 作为形容词,表示“健康的,安好的”,作为副词,表示“很好地”。

2) 有些形容词有两套比较级和最高级的构成形式, 其中一套是规则形式, 另一套是不规则形式。例如:

old	elder/older	eldest/oldest
far	further/farther	furthest/farthest
cruel	crueller/crueler	cruellest / cruelest

这些形容词的两套比较级和最高级的用法往往不同, 切勿弄混:

i. elder/eldest 和 older/oldest

elder/eldest 是不规则形式, 它们在句中只能用作定语, 尤其用以区别家庭成员的长幼(主要在英国英语中), 还可以表示地位的高低, 资历的深浅:

My elder (美国英语趋向于代之以 older,) brother is an pianist.

我哥哥是钢琴家。

Her elder (美国英语趋向于代之以 older) son is still unmarried.

她的长子还没有结婚。

Which is the elder (brother, sister)? (RHD) 哪个是大些的(哥哥, 姐姐)?

He was an elder statesman then. 他是那时候的政界元老。

I'm the eldest (student) and he is the youngest (one). 我(是)年龄最大(的学生), 他(是)年龄最小(的学生)。

注意: 在带有 than 的结构中不能用 elder, 例如: I'm two years older (不能用 elder) than my brother. 我比我弟弟大两岁。

elder 只用于人, 不能用于其他动物, 如不能说 \* the elder animal, 这时要说 the older animal。

older 和 oldest 既可以用作定语, 也可以用作表语, 既可指人, 也可指其他事物, 可以与 than 连用:

My sister is two years older than I am. 我姐比我大两岁。

Tom is the oldest in our family. 汤姆是我家最大的孩子。

The oak tree is older than that yew tree. 这棵橡树比那棵紫杉树老。

This book is older than that one. It's the oldest book I have in my library. 这本书比那本书出版得早, 是我的藏书中最早的一本。

ii . farther, farthest 和 further, furthest

这两对是形容词 far 的比较级和最高级的不同形式。它们有时候可以互换, 但有时候不能互换。

表示距离、空间或时间上的“较远”, 凡是用 farther 的地方一般都可以用 further 代替:

The nearer plane belongs to “Air China”, but the farther(further) one has “Air France” on it. 比较近的这架是“中国国际航空公司”的飞机, 而比较远的那架飞机上的标志是“法国航空公司”。

His house is on the further(farther) side of the street. 他的房子远在街道的那一边。

That library is the farthest(furthest) from the station. 那座图书馆离火车站最远。

further 还可以表示程度上“进一步的”, “更多的”, “晚些时候的”, “除此之外的”。表这几种转义时不能用 farther 替换。

Any further questions? 还有问题吗?

Keep working as usual till further notice. 照常工作, 直到另有通知(再停止)。

She intended to stay for a further two months. 她打算再逗留两个月。

This is the further problem to be solved. 这是下一步需解决的问题。

3)个别形容词有三套比较级和最高级形式,如 little:

Smaller/smallest, littler/littlest 和 lesser/least 这三对都是形容词 little 的比较级和最高级形式。

形容词 little“小”修饰可数名词时,其比较级和最高级借用 small 的 smaller, smallest 的形式,例如:

Susan is only a little(small) child. 苏珊只是个小孩子。

She is smaller than Anna. 她比安娜小。

She is the smallest child in her playgroup. 她是同伴中最小的孩子。

Littler/littlest 是典型的儿语,用来表示大小和年龄,例如:Don't hit him. He is littler than you are. 不要打他。他比你小。

I'm seven. Susanna six. And Jimmy's the littlest. He's four. 我七岁。苏珊娜六岁。吉米最小,他四岁。

Lesser/least 用作定语,分别表示“次要的”和“最低限度的,起码的”,常用在否定语境中,修饰表抽象意念的名词。例如:

We haven't the least idea. 我们毫无所知。

He did it without the least(smallest) hesitation. 他毫不犹豫地这样做了。

They are lesser men than Churchill. 他们是些不如丘吉尔重要的人物。

### 7.3 选用 -er/-est 词尾型还是 more/most 助词型

构成形容词的比较级最高级选用 -er/-est 词尾型还是 more/most 助词型,主要取决于形容词音节的多少。

1) 一般说来,单音节形容词通常采用 -er/-est 词尾型(以 -e 结尾的只加 -r/-st):

bright            brighter            brightest

low	lower	lowest
new	newer	newest
nice	nicer	nicest

但是单音节形容词在特别强调的比较中,也可以采用 more/most 助词型(详见 7.4):

It's more true to say that British English is influenced by American English, rather than the other way round. 更确切地说是英国英语受美国英语的影响,而不是相反。

此外,以 -ed 结尾的单音节形容词要采用 more/most 助词型:

bored	more bored	most bored
	less bored	least bored

## 2) 双音节形容词的比较级和最高级的构成

### i. 很多双音节形容词采用 -er/-est 词尾型:

mature	maturer	most mature
obscure	obscurer	most obscure

ii. 以不重读的元音字母 -y 结尾的双音节形容词采用 -er/-est 词尾型, y 改成 i, 加词尾:

angry	angrier	angriest
early	earlier	earliest
easy	easier	easiest

这类形容词还有 funny, noisy, wealthy, pretty 等。

iii. 以 -ow 结尾的双音节形容词,直接在其后加 -er 或 -est, 分别构成比较级和最高级:

narrow	narrower	narrowest
shallow	shallower	shallowest

mellow                  mellowed                  mellowest

iv. 以 -le 结尾的双音节形容词, 在其后加 -r 构成比较级, 加 -st 构成最高级:

able	abler	ablest
feeble	feebler	feeblest
gentle	gentler	gentlest
noble	nobler	noblest

v. 加常用后缀构成的双音节形容词采用 more/most 助词型, 例如:

famous	more famous	most famous
foolish	more foolish	most foolish
modern	more modern	most modern
normal	more normal	most normal
useful	more useful	most useful
careful	more careful	most careful
careless	more careless	most careless

如在这些形容词前加 less, least, 可表示负面比较“较差程度”“最差程度”, 如 less careful, least careful。

vi. 但有些双音节形容词既可以采用 -er /-est 词尾型, 也可以采用 more/most 助词型:

polite	politer/more polite	politest/most polite
clever	cleverer/more clever	cleverest/most clever
pleasant	pleasanter/more pleasant	pleasantest/most pleasant
simple	simpler/more simple	simplest/most simple

这类形容词还有 common, gentle, handsome, happy, narrow.



quiet, shallow, stupid 等。但没有把握时,双音节形容词用 more/most 助词形式最为可靠。

3) 三音节和三音节以上的多音节形容词只能采用 more/most 助词型:

attractive	more attractive	most attractive
frightening	more frightening	most frightening
important	more important	most important

以前缀 in-, ab-构成的多音节形容词也适应这条规则,例如:

incorrect	more incorrect	most incorrect
infamous	more infamous	most infamous
infrequent	more infrequent	most infrequent
abnormal	more abnormal	most abnormal

但以否定前缀 un-构成的多音节形容词可用两种方法构成比较级和最高级,如:

unhappy    unhappier/more unhappy    unhappiest/most unhappy

4) 分词转成的形容词只用 more, most 助词法:

interesting	more interesting	most interesting
worn	more worn	most worn
pleasant	more pleasant	most pleasant

5) 形容词比较级和最高级的读音变化

i. 某些以-ng 结尾的形容词变为比较级和最高级时,在/n/后加/g/音。例如:

long /lɒŋ/      longer /'lɒŋgə/      longest /'lɒŋgɪst/

young /jʌŋ/      younger /'jʌŋgə/      youngest /'jʌŋgɪst/  
strong /strɒŋ/      stronger /'strɒŋgə/      strongest /'strɒŋgɪst/

ii . 以 -re 结尾的形容词, 加 -r 或 -st 后, / r / 要发音。例如:  
pure /pjuə/      purer /'pjuər/      purest /'pjuərɪst/

iii . 以 -r 结尾的形容词, 加 -er 或 -est 后, / r / 要发音。例如:  
clever /'klevə/      cleverer /'klevər/      cleverest /'klevərɪst/  
dear /diə/      dearer /'diər/      dearest /'diərɪst/  
poor /puə/      poorer /'puərə/      poorest /'puərɪst/  
tender /'tendə/      tenderer /'tendərə/      tenderest /'tendərɪst/

## 7.4 强调比较级

所有各类单音节或多音节形容词、副词在强调对比时都可使用 more 比较级。

如上所述, 后加词尾 -er/-est 或前加助词 more 构成比较级形式, 主要取决于形容词, 副词是单音节还是多音节的(双音节者按词尾分别采用两种形式之一)。但是, 在特别强调对比的情况下, 所有各类形容词和副词(包括本来不可比较的绝对性质形容词和关系形容词), 都可使用 more 构成比较级形式。

下面, 对比较级的两种形式, 作一小结, 并举例说明强调对比 more... 的用法。

## 形容词、副词两种比较级形式小结与强调对比 more ... 用法表

后加词尾 -er 构成	前加 more 构成, 特别强调对比
1) 单音节者(除特殊变化者) older	1) 特别强调对比时 more old
2) 双音节以 -y 结尾者 easy --- easier (除副词带后缀 -ly 者如 quickly 等外)	2) 特别强调对比时 more easy
3) 双音节以 -er/-ow/-le 结尾者 narrower	3) 特别强调对比时 more narrow
4) 双音节不是以常用后缀构成者 politer	4) 现一般双音节词多加 more: more polite
5) 带否定前缀或复合而成三音节者 unhappy --- unhappier	5) 一般三音节及更多音节词 more beautiful, 特别强调对比时 more unhappy
6) 分词转成形容词不可加词尾 -er, 除: wicked(非分词构成)--- wickeder	6) 分词转成者前加 more more wretched
7) 表语形容词一般不加词尾-er, 除: fond(非专用表语形容词)--- fonder	7) 表语形容词前加 more more alive, more worth considering
8) 表绝对性质的形容词不可加词尾 -er, 除: full(可有相对意义)--- fuller	8) 特别强调对比时表绝对性质形容词前加 more perfect
9) 关系形容词不可加词尾 -er 不说 *Englisher	9) 特别强调对比时关系形容词前加 more English (than the English)(例句见后)

形容词、副词两种比较级形式简要用法与强调对比 more ... 用法示例如下:

后加词尾 -er 构成的用例	前加 more 构成的用例
<p>1) 单音节者(除特殊变化者)</p> <p>The windows are much wider than they are high. 那些窗户宽度比高度大得多。</p> <p>The older I get, the happier I am. (Swan) 我年龄越大, 过得越快活。</p> <p>He is worse than bad. (CGEL) 他不是一般的坏, 他特别坏。</p>	<p>1) 当单音节词用于强调对比时</p> <p>I was more nice than wise. 我只顾面子上好看, 却吃了亏。</p> <p>The more old we are, the more wise we become. 我们年龄越大, 人越精明。</p> <p>He is more good than bad. (ib) 他并不那么坏, 还是比较好的。</p>
<p>2) 双音节以 -y 结尾者</p> <p>Members of that community seem to be happier, heathier ... 那个地方的居民看来更快活、更健康... ;</p> <p>Easier said than done. 说时容易, 做时难。</p> <p>除副词带后缀 -ly 者如 loudly, quickly 等外。</p> <p>Explain the matter more simply. 把这事讲得更简单些。</p> <p>They said so, more and more loudly. 他们这样说着, 声音越来越高。试比较 Speak louder. (不带 -ly 的副词形式) 大声说。</p>	<p>2) 当双音节词用于强调对比时</p> <p>He is more wealthy than I thought. (CGEL) 他比我想像的更为富有。</p> <p>They find it more easy to remember picturesque details than other facts. 他们感到如画的情节比其他事实更容易记住。</p> <p>A more silly remark I can't imagine. 我难以想像有什么话比这更愚蠢。</p> <p>The Dutch War followed, more fierce and bloody. 接着又和荷兰人打仗, 打得更加凶恶、更加残酷。</p>
<p>3) 双音节以 -er/-ow/-le 结尾者原多加 -er</p> <p>She is cleverer/more clever than I/me. 她比我聪明。</p> <p>The coffins are something narrower than they used to be. 那些棺材比过去有些窄了。</p> <p>Explain in a simpler language/a more simple and lucid language. 用更简单易懂的话解释。</p>	<p>3) 当左列这些双音节词用于强调对比时</p> <p>They prefer a more bitter type of beer. 他们喜欢一种苦味更浓的啤酒。</p> <p>You are more narrow than biased. 说你偏见, 不如说你狭隘。</p> <p>He is more able and hard-working than ever before. 他比以前任何时候都更加能干、肯干了。</p>

<p>4) 双音节不是以常用后缀构成者 Her children are politer/more polite. 她的孩子们比较有礼貌(更有礼貌)。 比较以常用后缀构成者前加 more --- more active/antique/famous/fertile/hopeful/hopeless/pleasant/tiresome 更积极的/更古老的/更有名的/更肥沃的/更有希望的/更无望的/更愉快的/更使人厌倦的</p>	<p>4) 双音节词现在更为普遍前加 more profounder/more profound 更为深刻的; commoner/more common 更普通的; crueller/ more cruel 更残忍的; Some blame is attached to in more senior positions. (Schibsbye)(senior 中的 -or 为源出拉丁语表比较的后缀) 某种责备归给了身居更高地位的人们。</p>
<p>5) 带否定前缀或复合而成三音节者 unhappier/more unhappy 更不幸的; untidier/ more untidy 更不整洁的; kinder-hearted/more kind-hearted 更好心的</p>	<p>5) 一般三音节词或更多音节词 more definite 更明确的; more difficult 更难的; more significant 具有更重大意义的</p>
<p>6) 分词转成形容词不可加词尾 -er wicked 本非分词, 而从名词派生而来; wickeder/more wicked 更加邪恶的</p>	<p>6) 分词转成者前加 more more learned 更有学问的; more wretched 更糟糕的</p>
<p>7) 表语形容词一般不加词尾 -er fond 可兼任表语形容词和前位定语--- The more he knew her, the fonder/the more fond he grew of her. (RHD) 他对她了解越多就越是喜欢她。[专作表语、不可用作前位定语的 afraid, content, worth 等不加词尾 -er]</p>	<p>7) 表语形容词前加 more more content/fond/afraid/alike/alive 更满意/更喜爱/更害怕/更相像/更活跃的。 The inn is far more worth seeing. 那个客店更值得看看。 The real rates are more like 18 per thousand. (Web. 3) 实际税率更近于千分之十八。</p>

<p>8) 表绝对性质的形容词不可加词尾 -er</p> <p>There never was a kinder and juster man./There never was a man more kind and just. (Curme) (just 可有相对含义;后一说法更加强调)没有比他更善良、更正直的人了。</p> <p>He says he has given me full detail, but I want him to give me fuller particulars. (full 可有相对含义) 他说他已对我讲了全部实情,但我要他讲清更详尽的细节。</p>	<p>8) 表绝对性质形容词强调对比可前加 more</p> <p>more correct/right/proper/just/perfect/impossible 更正确/更正当/更恰当/更正义/更完美/更不可能的。It's wrong even to think it; it's more wrong to do it. 这种事连想一想都是错误的。干出来就更加错误了。</p> <p>Nothing is more dead than the centre of a large city on Sunday mornings. 再没什么比星期日早晨的大城市中心更为沉寂的了。</p>
<p>9) 关系形容词不可加词尾 -er 不说 *Englischer, *woodener</p>	<p>9) 以关系表性质强调对比,前加 more</p> <p>John is more English than the English. (CGEL) 约翰有着比英国人更讲究的英国作风(拘谨、保守等)。</p> <p>Never had I known a more wooden head than hers. 我从来没遇到过她这种脑筋这么死板的人。</p>

## 7.5 “原级、比较级、最高级”比较用语及歧义之避免

### 1) 原级比较法

当要将两个项目(人或事物)进行对比并表示“和…一样…”或“…不及…”时,用原级比较结构“as...as...”(同等程度比较)或“not as(so)...as...”(较低程度比较)。其中第一个 as 为度量副词(否定句可换用 so),第二个 as 为连词,引起状语从句,用作比较基础。例如:

i. “as + 原形 + as”型,意为“和…(不)一样…”

He is as energetic as a young man. 他像个年轻人那样精力充沛。

Soames is not as (so) suitable for the job as me (as I am). 索姆斯不如我适合这项工作。

ii. “as + adj. + 不定冠词 + 单数可数名词”, 其中用不可数名词时不带冠词:

Tom is as effective a worker as Jack. (注意词序; as effective a worker ... 为表语) 汤姆和杰克一样工作效率很高。

She doesn't want as expensive a car as this one. (as expensive a car 是定语) 她不想要像这辆这么贵的汽车。

He can't drink as sweet coffee as this. 他不能饮这么甜的咖啡。

以上三句可以改为:

Tom is a worker as effective as Jack. (as effective 为后置定语)

She doesn't want a car as expensive as this one.

He can't drink coffee as sweet as this.

注意: 由上例可以看出, “as...as”结构在句中可以用作表语、宾语, 也可以用作后置定语。

iii. 事物不同属性间程度的比较

She was as brilliant as she was beautiful. 她才貌双全。

The boy is as patient as he is strong. 那男孩既健壮又坚忍。

The square is as wide as it is long. 这个广场长、宽相等(是正方形的)。

This table isn't twice as wide as that one is long. 这个工作台的宽度不到那个工作台长度的两倍。

iv. 英语中有许多由“as...as”构成的比喻成语, 最有特色的是:

as blind as a bat 视力极差

as bold as brass 极其厚颜无耻

as bright as a button 真是个机灵鬼  
as brown as a berry 黑里透红  
as cheap as dirt 便宜透顶  
as clear as a bell 极其清晰  
as clear as day 显而易见  
as close as oyster 守口如瓶  
as cool as a cucumber 沉着冷静  
as cold as ice 冰冷  
as dark as pitch 漆黑  
as deaf as a post 双耳全聋  
as dry as a bone 十分枯燥  
as fat as a pig 肥得像猪  
as fierce as a tiger 凶猛如虎  
as free as a bird 自由自在  
as good as gold 信用如金  
as hard as nails 体格顽健;铁石心肠  
as keen as mustard 极其热心  
as large/big as life 真那么大,确确实实  
as light as a feather 轻如鸿毛  
as mad as a March hare 疯野得像交尾期的野兔  
as old as the hills 陈年老旧  
as pleased as Punch 洋洋自得  
as pretty as a picture 优美如画  
as quick as lightning 迅如闪电  
as right as nails 完全正确的;毫厘不爽的  
as safe as houses 绝对安全  
as true as steel 忠实可靠;千真万确  
as white as snow 洁白如雪  
as white as sheet 面色煞白



## 2) 比较级比较法

将两个项目(人或实物)进行比较并表示“比…更…一些”时,采用“more...than”结构(其中 more... 可为词尾型比较级, than 是连词,引起状语从句,或认为是介词,接用介词宾语。用作比较的基础,意为“比…更…”。

The man is older than I am. (非正式语 ... than me) 那个人比我年纪大。

He is more concerned about others than about himself. 他关心别人比关心自己为重。

It takes less time to go there by bus than by boat. 坐汽车到那儿比坐船快。

It's better to be prepared than unprepared. 有准备比没准备好。常常用以带形容词比较级的名词,后接 than 从句:

She is in better health now than (she was ) last year. 她现在身体比去年好。

He is a better man than I took him for. 他比我原来想象的好。

You've learnt more poetry and done more exercises than I have. 你比我学的诗歌多,做的练习也多。

I have less money than you. 我不如你有钱。(less 用于不可数名词)

They have made fewer mistakes than we have. 他们犯的错误比我们少。(fewer 用于可数名词)

There are fewer people in the store today than yesterday. 今天商店里的人比昨天少。

I have fewer dresses and less money than you. 我的衣服及金钱都比你少。

特别注意:“no...than”和“not...than”的不同:

Helen is not wiser than Jim. 海伦不比吉姆聪明。

Harry is no wiser than Jim. 海伦和吉姆一样不聪明(一样笨)。

Harry is not richer than Jim. 海伦不比吉姆富有。

Harry is no richer than Jim. 海伦吉姆一样不富(一样穷)。

I am not a teacher. 我不是教师。

I am no teacher. 我绝对够不上个教师。( = I can't be a teacher. )

汉语中“越 … 越 …”的说法,在英语用“the + 比较级… the + 比较级…”表达。这种句型使用连接副词 the 引导出比例状语从句,所接主句中用一个指示副词 the 与从句的 the 相呼应。

The older she is, the wiser she becomes. 她年龄越大就越明智。

The more expensive petrol becomes, the less people drive. 汽油越贵,开车的人越少。

汉语中“越来越…”的说法,在英语用“比较级 + 同形比较级…”表达:

Jane is growing fast. She's getting taller and taller. 简长得很快,她个子越来越高。

Computers become more and more complicated. 计算机变得越来越复杂。

The price of eggs becomes less and less expensive. 鸡蛋价格越来越便宜了。

Our country is getting stronger and stronger. 我们国家越来越强大。

事物不同而相应的属性间也有程度较高、较低的比较:

The bookcase is wider than it is tall. 这个书柜横宽竖矮。

The wall was in some places thicker than it was high. 这墙有些

地方的厚度比高度还大。

The dinning hall isn't less wide than that one is long. 这个大餐厅的宽度不比那个餐厅的长度小。

有时, as(so)...as 结构能表述 more...than 结构的含义, 例如:

Richard is not so capable as George. (= George is more capable than Richard.) 理查德不如乔治有能力。

I am not as old as him. (= He is older than I am.) 我比他年轻。

又有时, as...as...或 more...than...能表示最高级含义, 即当以上两个结构连用于 any, anything, else, ever, no, nothing 等词语时, 例如:

Mrs Bold did more work than anyone else. (= Mrs Bold did the most.) 博尔德夫人比任何人干得都多。(博尔德夫人干得最多)

Smith is older than any other salesman in the insurance department. (= Smith is the oldest boy in the insurance department.) 史密斯在保险公司里比任何男销售员都大(在保险公司的男职员里史密斯最大)。

这里讨论一下比较级中的省略。

表示比较(包括原级比较、比较级比较和最高级别比较)的句子中常有一些部分被省略, 而这些省略总是出现在比较状语从句中。

i. 省略整个比较状语从句。这种省略只有在具体的上下文或语境中才有意义。

A: Harry is a handsome boy. 哈里是个漂亮男孩。

B: I think his brother is more handsome (省 than he is). 我认为他兄弟比他还英俊。

But now you are even slimmer (...than you were). 但你现在更苗条了。

ii. 省略比较状语从句中与主句中重复的部分:

She is abler than he thinks (...省 that she is). 她比他实际设想得更能干。

We bought fewer books than the others (省 bought). 我们比其他人少买了几本书。

省略与主句中相同的动词时,也可用代动词 do 或 did 来补足其位置,如上例可以改成: We bought fewer books than the others did.

iii. 同时省略比较从句中的系词和表语:

He is as big as any of the other boys (省略 are big). 他的个子和其他任何男孩子的一样高。

This computer is not so expensive as that one (省略 is expensive). 这台计算机不像那台那么贵。

You will find these dates taste better than (省略 what) they look (省略 to be). 你会发现这些枣虽然看样子不太好,吃着却比较好。

iv. 只省略比较从句中的表语,例如:

The end of the play wasn't as good as the beginning was (省略 good). 这个剧的结尾不像开头那样好。

v. 省略比较状语从句中的主语,如:

The progress of the building of the library was not as good as (省略 it) was expected. 建造图书馆的进程不如预料的快。

Your house is far more luxurious than (省略 it) is necessary. 你的住宅没必要盖得那么豪华。

vi. 省略比较状语从句中的主语和谓语动词,只保留一个状语

成分：

It's pity that my exam result this time isn't as good as (it was) last time. 真遗憾我这次考试成绩不如上次好。

He is as diligent as (省略 he) ever (省略 was diligent before). 他现在还是像以前一样勤奋。

She is better than (省略 she was ) when I last saw her. 她比我上次见到她的时候好些了。

vii. 有时候省略比较从句中的所有成分,只保留谓语:

Things were better than expected (= than they had been expected). 情况比预想的好。

### 3) 最高级比较法

#### i. 最高级别比较句式

通常在三个以上的项目(人或事物)间进行比较时,才使用最高级比较形式“the + 形容词最高级”,其后或其前加比较范围:

This is the best room in the hotel. 这是旅馆里最好的房间。

She is the least experienced among the teachers there. 她是那里的教师中最没有经验的。

Of all things in the world, people are the most precious. 世间一切事物中,人是最为宝贵的。

The largest number of lakes are in Hubei. 湖北湖泊最多。

#### ii. 定冠词 the 的省略

如果一种事物不是与其他事物相比,而是自身属性的比较,形容词最高级作表语时,其前常常不加定冠词。如:

Vegetables are best when they are fresh. 蔬菜新鲜的时候最好。

The students are busiest on Tuesday. 学生们星期二最忙。

在带 to 的不定式前时最高级可以不带 the, 如:

I think it's safest to overtake now. 我想现在超过去最安全。

当形容词最高级实际不是表示“最...”, 而仅仅表示“非常...”之意时, 其前不加冠词或加不定冠词。例如:

It is most important to get there on time. 准时到那儿是极为重要的。

That's a most inspiring plan. 那是个非常令人鼓舞的计划。

如果形容词最高级前有物主代词, 就不需要加定冠词, 例如:

She is my best friend. (但在强调时说: She is the best friend of mine.) 她是我最好的朋友。

Fishing is his most favorite hobby. 钓鱼是他最大的业余爱好。

注意: 形容词最高级前一般不能用指示限定词 this, that, 例如:

The (My) youngest daughter is a teacher. 这个(我的)最小的女儿是教师。这里不能说 This/That youngest....

在“at one's ...”这种短语中形容词最高级之前不用定冠词 the, 例如: He is at his happiest in poem. 他写诗最拿手。

#### 4) 其他表示比较的常用说法

i. 不用 than..., 而用 to ... 的比较:

He is two years senior to me. 他比我大两岁。

He is three years junior to me. 他比我年轻三岁。

His appointment is junior to mine by six months. 他的任命比我迟六个月。

A lieutenant is inferior to a captain. 中尉低于上尉。

This cloth is inferior to real silk. 这种织物次于真丝。

Foreign mutton is inferior to home-grown in flavor. 从国外进口的羊肉不如国内的羊肉味道好。

He felt superior to John in maths. 他觉得自己的数学比约翰强。

The Allies are superior in number to their enemies. 盟军在数量上超过敌军。

The will was made two days prior to his death. 遗嘱是在他去世前两天写的。

This task is prior to all others. (is more important than all others). 这项任务比其他任务都重要。

ii . enough(置于被修饰名词之后)和 sufficiently(置于被修饰词语前面)表示程度足够的意思时,含有原级比较中“as ... as”之意。例如:

His salary is enough for food. (意为 is as enough as is necessary for food) 他的薪金够吃饭用的。

Five men will be quite enough. (will be quite enough as is necessary) 五个人就足够了。

I was sufficiently awake to hear all that the boys said. (LJED) 我醒着足以能听到男孩子们说的什么。

iii . 另外,还有一些短语也常用于比较:

... **of the two** 这里定冠词 the 不能省掉。例如:

He is the cleverer of the two. 他是两个人中较聪明的一个。

She is the taller of the two. 两个女孩中她个子高些。

**all the** + 比较级 ... (因而更加...) 例如:

As a result, the rich became all the richer. 结果富的更富。

I felt all the worse for the medicine. 我吃下药之后,觉得更糟了。

The storm became all the more severe. 暴风雨越来越大了。

**more than** ... (不止), **less than** (不到):

She is more than a friend to me 她对我不仅是个朋友。

She is more than happy about it. 她为此不止感到高兴。

The smallest weighs less than 100 pounds. 最小的还不到 100 磅重。  
Our trip to Beijing was more than sightseeing. 我们去北京不只是观光游览。

**no more than**… (只不过 …)

It's no more than 2 miles to the sea. 去海边只不过两英里。

**no less/fewer than** (= as much/many as 强调数量之多, 意为: 与…同样多, …之多):

I have taken no less than five courses this term. 这学期我修了 5 门课程之多。

He walked no less than three miles yesterday. 他昨天走了足有 3 英里远。

No fewer than thirty people were waiting in line. 多达 30 个人在排队等候。

### 5) 形容词比较级中歧义之避免

如果比较复合句的主句中只有一个名词或代词作为比较对象, 那么句子的意义明确而不会产生歧义。但当比较句的主句中有两个名词或代词, 或是有一个名词和一个代词, 而从句省略得只剩下一个名词时, 就可能产生歧义。例如:

He likes them as much as Tom (likes them). 他像汤姆一样喜欢他们。

He likes them as much as (he likes) Tom. 他像喜欢汤姆一样喜欢他们。

He loves the cat more than his child (loves the cat). 他比他的孩子更喜欢这只猫。

He loves the cat more than (he loves) his child. 他爱这只猫胜于爱他的孩子。



以上四句,如略去括弧内容,就形成两对同形歧义句。在这种情况下,只能靠上下文或具体情况辨明实际所指。

但在正式英语中,如果比较从句中省略的只剩下一个代词时,就不会产生歧义,因为代词的主格(作主语),宾格(作宾语)可以避免这种歧义。再如:

He loves the cat more than her (than he loves her 之略)。

He loves the cat more than she (than she loves the cat 之略)。

注意:在非正式英语中,有省略的比较从句中的代词主格形式可以取代其宾格:

He loves his cat more than them ( = more than they do)。

但上面这个句子在脱离上下文的情况下仍然有歧义,仍然可以作出两种理解——既可以把 them 视为主语,也可以视为宾语,但如果采用下面的结构就能避免这种歧义:

He loves his cat more than they do (love it)。

He loves his cat more than he does them (loves them)。

## 7.6 最高级的比较范围

最高程度的比较范围主要是以短语形式表示:

1) of all ... (在所有的...之中),表示有许多人或事物,某人或事物是从其他中挑选出来的,指比较的数量范围,置于最高级形式之前或之后。例如:

Of all animals, a cow is the most useful. 在所有的动物中,牛最有用。

She is the richest of all my friends. 我所有的朋友之中她最富有。

2) of the ... (比较范围为三者以上),多置于最高级形式之后,

间或置于其前,间或置于句前。例如:

George is the quickest runner of the three. 乔治是三人中跑得最快的。

Harry is the most polite of the boys. 哈里是男孩子中最有礼貌的。

注意: of 之后的定冠词不能没有,表示确定的事物范围。但下列两句中, of 加泛指复数名词,不带定冠词,表明其前最高级所指的是“极为…”“非常…”之意:

She had the sweetest of smiles. (Wood) 她笑得非常甜美。

He spoke in the softest of voices. (ib) 他以极为柔和的声音讲话。

3) among ... (在…之中)与 of all 类似,但 among 只表示在人或事物的集合之中,没有确定的数量概念。例如:

Among your friends, whom do you like best? 你的朋友中,你最喜欢那一个?

This mountain is among the highest in the world. 这座山是世界上最高的山之一。

Young women are always among the first to take up new slang. 年轻女子总是率先接受新俚语。

He was the first among the scholars. 在这些学者中他名列第一。

She is the most energetic clerk among them. 他们是他们中间精力最充沛的职员。

4) in ... (在…之中), in 强调处所与时间范围。例如:

He is one of the most famous actors in the world. 他是世界上最著名的演员之一。

She is the cleverest pupil in her class. 她是班里最聪明的学生。

He believes that the greatest matter of prose in recorded history is

Plato. 他认为有记载历史上最伟大的散文作家是柏拉图。  
(matter 原义“事物”“事件”)

5) on ... (在...之中), 多表示在某一平面范围或某一组织范围。例如:

To stage the most modest play on Broadway costs about 10 thousand dollars. (Schibsbye) (把百老汇大街看作一个地面)  
在百老汇上演最省钱的戏剧要花费一万美元。

It's the best article I've ever read on space travel. 这是我读过的关于太空飞行的文章中最好的一篇。

John is the best player I know on the team. 约翰是我所知道的队里最好的队员。

He is in the highest rank on the committee. 他是委员中地位最高的。

6) 还有其他介词短语, 也说明比较原因, 如:

He is the best man for the job. 他是这一行工作的最佳人选。

It's the oldest trick. . 那是最陈旧的把戏了。

7) 除以上介词短语外, 限制性定语从句(包括完整的或省略的从句)也可以用来表示最高程度的比较范围。例如:

She is the most alive of any one I know. (单数形式含复数意义)  
(Schibsbye) 我知道她是最活泼的一个。

It is the most beautiful painting I've ever seen. 这是我所见过的最美的绘画。

This is the best shirt I have. 这是我最好的衬衫。

I want to give my children the very best education I can afford.  
我要尽我所能让我的孩子们接受最好的教育。

## 7.7 比较级和最高级的修饰语

### 1) 形容词原级的修饰语

加于原级比较的修饰语多为程度副词所承担,置于第一个 as 之前,即“修饰语 + as + 原级 + as...”模式。这类修饰语有 almost, by no means, exactly, just not half, nothing, like, not nearly, nowhere near, quite, ten times, 等等:

Cato is not nearly as big as you are. 加图根本不能和你比块头。

Cast iron is almost as useful as steel. 铸铁几乎和钢一样有用。

There are now three times as many colleges in our state as in 1994. 我们州里现在的大学比 1994 年增加了两倍(是 1993 年的三倍)。

My command of English is not half so (as) good as yours. 我英文掌握得还不及你一半儿好。

### 2) 比较级的修饰语

形容词比较级的修饰语多由量词或程度副词承担,放在比较级之前,构成“度量状语 + 比较级 + than...”模式。这类修饰语有: two years, a bit, (very) much, far, hardly any, a lot, lots, a little, no, rather, somewhat 等。例如:

His brother is three years younger than he. 他弟弟比他小三岁。

It's much colder today than it was yesterday. 今天比昨天冷得多。

Houses are a lot more expensive these years. 这些年房价贵多了。

There have been many fewer burglaries this year in this area. 这个地区今年盗窃案件少了许多。

Cotton output was 38 per cent higher than in the previous year. 棉花产量比头一年高 38%。

It was one-fourth cheaper than the market price. 它比市场价格低四分之一。

The new method was over twenty times more efficient than before. 新方法使效率比过去提高二十倍以上。

### 3) 形容词最高级的修饰语

形容词最高级之前也可以加状语。例如：

It has become the 2nd largest light industrial city in the state.  
(2nd 置于定冠词 the 之后) 它已经成了该州第二大轻工业城市。

She is by far the most active member in our class. 她是我们班显然最活跃的同学。

This is about the biggest computer in China. 这大概是中国最大的计算机。

## Exercise 7

### I. 用形容词的比较级或最高级形式填空：

1. Of her two sons, the \_\_\_\_\_ (young) is \_\_\_\_\_ (health) than the \_\_\_\_\_ (old).
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ (happy) day of my life was also my \_\_\_\_\_ (lucky) because I won first prize in a competition.
3. Pauline is not as \_\_\_\_\_ (fat) as her cousin, but is definitely \_\_\_\_\_ (tall).
4. You didn't put in as \_\_\_\_\_ (much) effort as you should have. If you had, you would have done \_\_\_\_\_ (good) on the examination.
5. She chose the \_\_\_\_\_ (simple) pattern in the book though the \_\_\_\_\_ (complicated) ones were \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty).
6. Motor-cycles are \_\_\_\_\_ (noisy) than motor-cars.

7. Do you think the discovery of wireless telegraphy \_\_\_\_\_  
(wonderful) than that of radium?
8. It doesn't take \_\_\_\_\_ (much) than four days to cross the  
Atlantic, does it?

## II. 参照给出的例子, 改写句子:

Example:

Jill and Steve are talking about the flat.

The bathroom wasn't very big. No, it wasn't as big as our  
bathroom.

The kitchen was sunny. Yes, it was sunnier than our kitchen.

1. The living room was big. (Yes)
2. The study wasn't very cozy. (No)
3. The bedroom was a bit dark. (Yes)
4. The garage wasn't very convenient. (No)
5. The area is attractive. (Yes)
6. The bathroom was small. (Yes)
7. The street below wasn't very noisy. (No)
8. The windows were all big. (Yes)
9. The lift was small. (Yes)
10. The free parking area is good. (Yes)

## III. 根据括号里给出的意思, 在横线上填上适当的形容词:

1. as brown as a \_\_\_\_\_ (usually said of a person who is very  
sunburnt 晒成红棕等深颜色)
2. as clear as \_\_\_\_\_ (for things seen or understood)
3. as cool as a \_\_\_\_\_ (for a person who doesn't lose his head)
4. as white as a \_\_\_\_\_ (for a person who is ill or badly  
frightened)

5. as clear as a \_\_\_\_\_ (for a sound, e.g. a person's voice)

**IV. 参照例句, 用适当的形容词形式改写句子:**

Example:

Jill gets up at 7:45. Steve gets up at 8 o'clock. (early)

Jill gets up earlier than Steve.

Steve doesn't get up as early as Jill.

The Notting Hill Gate flat costs £ 75 a week. The Baxters' flat costs £ 60 a week. (expensive)

The Notting Hill Gate flat is more expensive than the Baxters' flat.

The Baxters' flat isn't as expensive as the Notting Hill Gate flat.

1. Steve's office is 30 minutes away by bus. Jill's school is only 20 minutes away. (far away)
2. The Notting Hill Gate flat has two bedrooms. The Baxters' flat has only one bedroom. (big)
3. Pam and Jeff have holidays at short intervals all year round. Jill and Steve have only one holiday a year. (many)
4. The rent for Steve's flat is £ 60 a week. The rent for Jeff's flat is £ 90 a week. (reasonable)

**V. 使用形容词比较级或最高级翻译句子:**

1. 这本书是他图书馆里最有趣的书。
2. 这是这个区域里最美丽的房子。
3. 这个孩子在班里比其他孩子长得高。
4. 我爱这幅图画胜于其它图画。
5. 铅比铝重。
6. 地球比金星大得不多。
7. 飞机比鸟飞得更快, 是真的吗?

## 第八章 形容词惯用法

### 8.1 形容词的前位修饰语

#### 1) 副词作形容词的前位修饰语

形容词可以由某些副词来修饰,置于其前,故称其为前位修饰语。例如:

The landscape is incredibly lovely. 风景极好。

The problem became extremely serious. 问题变得相当严重。

The weather was too hot to be enjoyable. 天气太热感到不舒服。

作形容词前位修饰语的副词最常见的是那些表示增强和减弱的副词。

表示增强的副词从假定的标准出发,使程度增强。比较 a funny film, a very funny film, 又如: deeply concerned, highly intelligent, perfectly reasonable, too bright, unbelievably smart, awfully sorry, downright ridiculous, terribly nervous, totally anonymous 等。

表示减弱的副词从假定的标准出发,使程度减弱。比较: It was dark. It was almost dark. 又如: a bit dull, a little extravagant, almost impossible, fairly small, hardly noticeable, nearly dark, pretty rare, rather late, somewhat uneasy, plain silly 等。

应该注意:

1. a bit 和 a little 多用于减弱,但若与表示“令人不快”的形容词连用,则含有“有些过分”的意思:



The weather is a bit hot. 天气有点热。

She felt a little tired. 她觉得有点累。

ii. almost, nearly, 和 practically 这三个副词都可以用于减弱, 三者之间的一个区别是, 只有 nearly 可以用在 not, very, pretty 的后面。

例如可以说 It's nearly (almost/practically) dark. 也可以说, It's not (very/pretty) nearly dark. 但不可以说 \* It's not (very/pretty) almost /practically dark.

iii. 副词 so 置于形容词 many 之前, 加强 many 的语气:

You took so many photos the first day you arrived. 你到达的第一天就拍了那么多照片。

iv. 在非正式语体中, too 可以用 extremely 来代替: It's too (extremely) kind of you. 你太善良了。而在否定句中, 常把 too 视为 very 的同义词: I don't feel too (very) good. 我感觉不太好。

v. 某些副词可用于增强形容词的语势, 而不是提高形容词的程度:

She has a really beautiful face. 她的脸确实漂亮。

That's just impossible. 那绝对不可能。

He looked all confused. 他完全不知所措。

They're certainly welcome. 他们当然受欢迎。

The play was indeed excellent (excellent indeed). 那个剧的确好极了。

vi. 方面副词用作形容词前置状语, 意为“在…方面”:

politically expedient 政治方面有利

theoretically sound 理论上妥善的

technically possible 技术上是可能的

2) 某些形容词有时可以置于其他形容词之前作为副词用, 以强调后一形容词。例如:

He is carrying a good heavy bag. 他提着一个很重的包。

What a great big house he built! 他建造了一个多么大的房子啊!

She has a great many admirers. 她有好多爱慕者。

I took a great/a good many photos. 我照了好多照片。

另外, 前位修饰语形容词的次序的改变, 常会引起整个名词词组意义的改变, 例如:

dirty English books 被弄脏了的英文书籍

English dirty books 英文的淫秽书籍, 即黄色书籍

当名词中心词带两个或更多个形容词作前置修饰语时, 这些形容词通常遵循一定的次序(见 1.1)。

## 8.2 形容词的后位修饰语

形容词后位修饰语, 有的语法学家把这种修饰语称为形容词的补足语。可以承担这种“补足语”的有下列 6 种短语或从句:

1) 介词短语后位修饰语——形容词能和各种介词搭配构成形容词短语, 通常特定的形容词要求特定的介词来搭配, 例如: good at, fond of, opposed to 等。常用于构成这种短语的介词有: about, at, from, of, on/upon, to, with 等。这里值得指出的是, 某些形容词常常能够和两个或两个以上的介词连用, 如: angry about, angry at, angry with 等。下面列出常与这些介词搭配的形容词(包括一般形容词和分词形容词), 并举例:

**about:** angry, glad, happy, knowledgeable, mad, reasonable, aggrieved, annoyed, frightened, pleased, worried 等。  
He was glad about his son's promotion to manager. 他很高兴儿子升为经理。  
He was very worried about her reaction. 他很担心她的反应。

**at:** angry, brilliant, clever, good, hopeless, terrible, alarmed, amused, delighted, disgusted, pleased, puzzled 等。  
She was bad at English. 她英语学得很不好。  
I am much pleased at the good news. 我听到这好消息很高兴。

**from:** different, distant, distinct, free, remote 等。  
He is a man free from prejudice. 他是一个没有偏见的人。

**of:** afraid, ashamed, capable, certain, conscious, empty, fond, full, glad, proud, short, worthy, convinced, scared, tired 等。  
Aren't you conscious of your faults? 你没有发现自己的错误吗?  
I'm not scared of snakes. 我不怕蛇。

**on/upon:** contingent, dependent, intent, keen, reliant, based, bent, set 等。  
He was intent on his work. 他专注于自己的工作。  
She is bent on becoming a musician. 她决心要成为音乐家。

**to:** answerable, averse, close, due, liable, similar, accustomed, allied, inclined, opposed, 等。

A baby is liable to diseases. 婴儿容易患病。

She is soon accustomed to the weather here. 她很快习惯了这里的气候。

**with:** angry, busy, comfortable, compatible, content, familiar, friendly, furious, happy, impatient, incompatible, sick, uneasy, annoyed, bored, concerned, delighted, depressed, disappointed, disgusted, dismayed, distressed, drunk, enchanted, obsessed, occupied, overcome, pleased, satisfied, taken 等。

He is impatient with his wife. 他对妻子感到不耐烦。

He is drunk with success. 他沉醉于胜利之中。

2) to-不定式(或短语)后位修饰语“形容词 + 不定式”构成形容词短语有 3 种类型:

i. 第一类短语所在句中, 句子的主语也是不定式的逻辑主语, 例如:

She is slow to react. (= She reacts slowly.)

He was hesitant to agree with us. (= He agreed with us hesitantly.)

这类形容词从意义上可以分为表可能、表情感、表评价、表观点 4 种:

表示可能(可能性, 倾向性等)的形容词, 常见的有: able, certain, determined, disposed, due, eager, eligible, fated, fit, free, greedy, hesitant, important, keen, liable, loath, poised, powerless, prepared, prone, ready, reluctant, set, sure, unable, unqualified,

welcome, willing, worthy 等。

表示喜怒哀乐情感的形容词,这些情感产生于动词不定式所表示的动作,常见的有: afraid, amazed, amused, angry, annoyed, ashamed, astonished, bored, cheered, concerned, confused, content, delighted, depressed, desperate, disappointed, disgusted, dissatisfied, disturbed, embarrassed, excited, fascinated, flattered, frightened, furious, glad, grateful, gratified, grieved, horrified, happy, humble, hurt, impatient, indignant, insulted, interested, jealous, jubilant, miserable, moved, offended, overjoyed, overwhelmed, pleased, proud, provoked, puzzled, relieved, satisfied, scared, shocked, sorry, surprised, thankful, unhappy, vexed, worried 等。

表示喜怒哀乐情感的形容词(常为分词形容词),其中的不定式表示原因,如:

I'm sorry to keep you waiting. (= I'm sorry because I have kept you waiting.)

Herry was happy to hear it. (= Herry was happy because he has heard it.)

表示对人类行为评价的形容词:

careful, careless, crazy, fortunate, greedy, lucky, mad, nice, silly, unlucky, unwise, wise, wrong 等。

表示观点的形容词,如:

**be sure to do**, 表说话人确信句子主语所指的人或事物..., 例如:  
John is sure to pass the exam. 约翰一定能通过考试。(说话人确信约翰能通过考试。)

Janet is sure to be put on the committee. 我们确信一定能让珍妮特加入委员会。

Many people are sure to lose their job. 有许多人必定会失业。

She is a strong swimmer and many people feel that she is sure to

succeed. 她是一个很强的游泳能手,许多人都认为她能成功。  
George is sure to see Marry. 乔治肯定会去看玛丽。(说话人肯定,而不是乔治肯定)

应该注意:

在某些情况下,同一个形容词后跟动词不定式和“介词 + 动名词”以及跟 than 从句在意义上是不一样的。例如:be sure to do 说话者确信句子主语所指的人能…; **be sure of doing** 说话人本人确信自己能…;例如:

John is sure of passing his exam. 约翰确信(自己)能通过考试。

Janet is sure of being put on the committee. 珍妮特确信(自己)能被派入委员会。

**be sure that**(表达主语本人的观点):

He is sure that he will pass the exam. 他确信他本人能通过考试(表达主语 he 的观点)。

He is sure that the party will be a success. 他确信这次聚会将会成功。

Reagen seemed sure that he would win the election. 里根似乎确信他会在大选中获胜。

ii. 另一类短语中不定式的逻辑主语不明确,如: The food is ready to eat. 在这些类型中,如果要使主语明确,我们能够插入一个由 for 引导的逻辑主语,如;

The food is ready (for the children) to eat. 饭做好了,可以吃了。

The novel is difficult (for me) to read. 这本书难读。

Are these books free (for visitors) to borrow? 这些书能随便借吗?

还有一类,其特点是,所在句子的主语可以是不定式中的逻辑主语,也可以是其逻辑宾语:

George is quick to take offence (生气). (= George takes offence quickly. (句中的主语同时也是不定式短语的逻辑主语。))

The clothes are easy to wash. (句中的主语则是不定式短语的逻辑宾语。)

可以说 The clothes wash easily.

也可以说 It is easy to wash the clothes.

注意:在这种结构中要表示度量意义时,应使用 enough 等;要表示超越意义时,应使用 too 等。例如:

You are old enough to look after yourself. 从年龄看,你完全可以照顾自己了。

Your teacher was excessively generous to give you an A. 老师给了你 A,真是太宽松了。

The book is sufficiently simple to understand. 这本书很简单,完全能读懂。

I'm much too tired to go out. 我太累了,不想外出。

They are not too poor to own a car. 他们不太穷,有辆车还没问题。

The writing is too faint to be read: 字迹太模糊,看不清。

在类似结构中,句子主语是不定式短语中介词的逻辑宾语,所以,不定式可以带句末介词:

He is pleasant to talk to. (= It is pleasant to talk to him.) 和他讲话,使人很愉快。

The paper is terribly too flimsy to write on. 在这种纸上面写字太容易划破。

Is the cloth sufficient to make a dress out of? 这块布足够做衣

服吗？

3) -ing 分词与动名词(或短语)后位修饰语:

Margaret is busy writing letters. 玛格丽特正忙着写信。

It is scarcely worth going home. 不值得回家跑一趟。

The cartons are worth(while) saving. (CGEL) 这些纸箱值得保存。

We're fortunate (in) having Aunt Mary as a babysitter. 我们请玛丽阿姨当保姆很幸运。

She's not capable of looking after herself. (加 of 再加动名词) 她不能照顾自己。

worth while 分写, 那 while 是名词补语, 后面不可再加动名词:

The trip was worth while. (RWRT) (The trip was worth making.)

不说 \* The trip was worth while making. 不说 \* What she said is worth while repeating. (ib)

worthwhile 连写, 是形容词, 多做定语; 做表语时, 可无补语:

It was surely a worthwhile trip.

The trip was very worthwhile. (RWRT)

Learning a foreign language is worthwhile (is worth your while):

It's worthwhile learning (to learn) a foreign language.

较规范的说法, 不用“worthwhile + -ing 补语”, 而用“worth + -ing 补语”代替之:

What she said is worth (不宜用 worthwhile) repeating.

作表语的 worth 本来是必须带名词或动名词补语的:

The work is worth doing.

不能说 \* Doing the work is worth. 因而 It's worth doing the work. (“做此工作是值得下功夫的。”) 本属错句。1965 年, H. W.



Fowler 在 A Dictionary of Modern English Usage 中说, 这样的句子错了! 因为句中 worth 的必须带有补语。而 doing ... 不是补语, 却是实际的主语, 前面的 It 是引导语。

像形容词 like 作表语要带有补语(原是介词 to 的宾语, to 现在已不用)一样, 表语形容词 worth 经过历史演变, 现也直接用名词或动名词补语。上面那句话应改作 It's worth while doing the work. 但是, 1975 年以来, 语法家们一致认为 worth 无补语的那种说法是对的:

It's worth (while) trying. (1975, Close)(while 可以略去不用)  
试一试是值得的。

It's worth making an effort. (1978, LDCE)作一番努力是值得的。

Is it worth visiting Lancaster? (1980, Swan)

It's nor worth getting angry with her. (ib)

It's worth (while) saving the cartoons. (1985, CGEL)

It's scarcely worth (while) your going home. (ib)

It's worth reading the book. (1989, ALD)

It's worth taking your time when you visit the cathedral. (1995, LDCE) 你们参观那大教堂时, 慢慢细看是值得的。

语法总要随着语言的变化而变化。所以 worth 有时可以不带补语了。这也说明它不是(像 RHD, LDCE 等英美大词典所讲)属介词性质。

4) that 从句——形容词之后的从句和动词之后的从句一样, 也可以用虚拟语气动词。其中的 that 常可省略:

They were insistent (that) we be ready. 他们坚持要我们做好准备。

Are you willing that	{	he should be permitted to resign? 让他辞职你愿意吗? he be permitted to resign? he is permitted to resign?
----------------------	---	--

### 5) 作后位修饰语的 wh-从句:

I was not clear what they would do.

应该指出的是, wh-从句作形容词后位修饰语时, 有些形容词结构上要求带介词, 即 wh-从句之前和形容词之间有介词, 而该介词有时候被省略。例如:

I was unsure (of) what I should say. 该说什么, 我不太确信。

He is unsure (about) whether the problem was solved. 那个问题是否得到了解决, 他不确信。

John is careful (about) what he does with his money. 在用钱方面, 约翰很小心。

Are you sure (of) how much the machine cost? 这台机器的价钱, 你清楚吗?

但注意: 如果形容词本身不要求带介词, 则不可以插入任何介词。如不可说 \* It was unclear of/about what they would do. 只说 It was unclear what they would do. 他们将会怎么办, 当时还不清楚。

### 6) than 从句

这种结构很特殊, 因为属于这一类型的唯一的形容词是并非比较级形式 different。例如: She's quite a different girl than she was five years ago. 她现在和五年前那个小姑娘的样子全然不同了。

### 8.3 必带后位介词短语修饰语,不可单用的形容词

英语中绝大多数形容词根据意义可以单独作表语,即并不是非跟介词等不可。但也有一些形容词只有在与介词短语搭配时才能表述特定的意义,用作表语。例如:

I'm very fond of (喜欢) Elgar's music. 我非常喜欢埃尔加的音乐。

He is intent on his studies. (专心致志于...)他专心致志于学习。

We are subject to the laws of our country. (受...控制)我们受国家法律的约束。

这类形容词及其搭配还有:

1) 一般形容词:

**afraid of** (害怕)

He is afraid of his wife. 他怕老婆。

**aware of** (意识到,觉察到)

She was not aware of what was going on around. 她没有意识到她周围发生的事情。

He wasn't aware of the danger. 他没有觉察到危险。

**averse to; from** 反对;不乐意

The conservative-minded are averse to making any changes. 头脑保守的人反对任何改革。

They are averse from taking action. 他们不乐意采取行动。

**contingent on/upon; to** 取决于,以...为条件;对...可能发生

The time of his arrival is contingent on the weather. 他到达的时间要看天气如何而定。

Such risks are contingent to the trade. 这种风险在这一行业中是可能发生的。

**fond of** 喜欢

He is fond of children. 他喜欢小孩。

She was very fond of inviting them to tea. 她很喜欢请他们喝茶。

They asked if I couldn't get fond of Peter. 他们问是不是我不喜欢彼得。

**liable to; for**, 容易得(病等), 可能会受到(惩罚等); 对...负责

She is liable to bad colds. (LDCE) 她容易得重感冒。

He is liable to seasickness. 他容易晕船。

Every man is liable to error. 人人都可能犯错误。

People who walk on the grass are liable to a fine of \$5. 从草地上走的人会受罚缴纳5美元的罚款。

**loath + to-v** (动词不定式) 不愿意, 不喜欢

I am loath to get out of bed on cold morning. 在寒冷的早上我不愿意起床。

The salesman is loath to accept a job in a new territory. 推销员不喜欢接受不熟悉地区的推销工作。

**reliant on** 依靠

He is heavily reliant on bank loans. (ALD) 他很大程度上依靠银行贷款。

We should not be reliant on military power alone. (LDCE) 我们不应该只诉诸武力。

**tantamount to** (实质上)等于, 相当于

The king's request was tantamount to a command. 皇帝的要求实质上等于命令。

His refusal to appear in court to answer the charges is tantamount to an admission of guilt. (Chambers) 他拒绝到庭受审就等于承认犯罪。

这类形容词中有一些可以单独置于名词前, 作定语。例如:

A fond mother may spoil her child. (LDCE) 溺爱的妈妈会宠坏孩子。

I got angry at his proud manner. 我因他那傲慢的态度而发怒。

## 2) 分词形容词:

少数分词形容词也具有形容词的特性。例如:

**accustomed to** 习惯于

I soon got accustomed to his strange ways. (ALD) 我很快习惯了他那些古怪的方法。

**allied to, with** 和...有关系;与...联盟,与...有关联

The increase in violent crimes is allied to the rise in unemployment. (OALD) 恶性犯罪的增加和失业率的上升有关系。

Heavy industry is allied to light industry. 重工业和轻工业有密切关系。

**based on/upon** 以...为基础

This international language is based on/upon the sound of English. 这种国际语言是以英语语音为基础的。

**bent on/upon** 一定要,决心要,热衷于

He is fully bent on the project. 他一心扑在这项工程上。

She seems bent upon becoming a musician. 她似乎一心要当音乐家。

**opposed to** 反对,不赞成;相反

I had no idea that your husband was opposed to my visits. 你丈夫反对我的拜访,我一点也不知道。

Evil is opposed to good. 恶与善相对。

和一般形容词一样,分词形容词中也有一些可以单独置于名词前,作定语。如:

He took his accustomed seat by the fire. 他坐在他习惯坐的火炉边的座位上。

He delivered a set speech. (CULD) 他做了一次有准备的讲话。

Are the meals at set times in this hotel? 这家旅馆按固定时间开饭吗?

#### 8.4 时、空、重量、价值等度量搭配

表示时间、空间、重量、价值等的度量词汇常与形容词搭配使用:

1) 时间单位 + 形容词

Mr. Jespersen is 75 years old. 杰斯珀森 75 岁了。

The address was 37 minutes long. (NDEC) 演讲长达 37 分钟。

She has a seven-month-old child. 她有个 7 个月的孩子。(注意: 复数度量词用“-”号与形容词连结时, 不加复数“-s”)

The book is already three days overdue. 这本书过期三天了。

She was already years older in thought and act. (Dreiser) 她的思想举止已经大大老练了。

My sister is two years younger than them. 我姐姐比他们小两岁。

He was five full years my senior. (Hudson) 他比我大整整 5 岁。

2) 空间单位 + 形容词

a ruler twelve inches long 一把 12 英寸长的尺子

a well sixteen feet deep 一口 16 英尺深的井

The bridge is 212 meters long and 17 meters wide. 这座桥 212 米长, 17 米宽。

The river is 30 feet broad. (ALD) 这条河 30 英尺宽。

The water is two meters deep. 水深两米。

Susan is only five feet tall. 苏珊只有 5 英尺高。

The village is fifteen miles away. (CGEL) 村庄离这儿 15 英里远。

His last javelin throw was a few inches short. 他的最后一次扔标枪近了几英寸。

### 3) 重量单位 + 形容词

He is 10 pounds heavy. 他 10 磅重。

He is twenty pounds heavier than John is. 他比约翰重 20 磅。

Cotton output was 37 percent higher than in the previous years.  
棉花产量比前几年高出 37%。

### 4) 价值单位 + 形容词

The factory's income was 13.5 percent greater than in 1976. 工厂的收入比 1976 年增长 13.5%。

It was one-fourth cheaper than the market price. 它比市场价格低四分之一。

The new power station cost 80 per cent less than the one built earlier. 新电站比早些时候建成的电站建筑成本降低 80%。

### 5) 其他度量词 + 形容词

The bag of flour is only half full. (LDCE) 面粉袋子里只有半袋面粉。

The bottle is three-quarters empty. 瓶子空着四分之三。

### 6) 不定量词 + 形容词

表示不定量的词语 many, much, a little, a bit, slightly, a great (good) deal, a lot 以及表强调语气的 completely, even, still, yet 等

在句中的作用与上述表时、空、重量、价值的词相同,但它们的含义较含糊,主要起增强或减弱的作用。(见 8.1)例如:

It's a little late. 有点晚。

I was much afraid of earthquake. 我非常害怕地震。

The situation is still worse. 情况更糟。

### 8.5 “what /such a/an + 形容词 + 名词”与“how/so/as/too 形容词 + a/an + 名词”

这两个说法结构不同,含意各异:

1)“what/such a/an + 形 + 名”结构中的名词必须是单数可数名词。该结构用以表示感叹,其中的疑问代词 what 是名词修饰语,意为:多么…的,何等…的:

What an interesting story! 多么有趣的故事呀!

What a fine example he set us! 他为我们树立了多么好的榜样啊!

What/Such a noisy party (it was)! (CGEL) 那聚会太嘈杂了!

2)“such a/an …”结构用以表示程度。其中的 such 为形容词性质,意为“那么…的,这么…,如此…的,很…的,非常…的”:

I've never seen such a beautiful lake. 我从未见过这么美丽的湖。

He is such a clever tennis player. 他是个非常灵敏的网球球员。

“how/so/as/too 形 + a/an + 名”结构中的 how, so, as, too 皆为副词,用以强调形容词的程度。这些词也可以用于带有形容词接名词的结构中,但通常只对单数名词才能这样用。该形容词常为表语。例如:

How strange is his appearance! (CGEL) 他的样子多古怪!

It was so warm a day that we decided to go to the sea. 天气这么



好我们决定到海滨去。

She is too kind a girl to refuse. 她是个非常善良的姑娘, 无法拒绝人们的请求。

It was as pleasant a day as I have ever spent. 那是我一生中过得最愉快的一天。

在带有形容词和名词, 而名词为复数或不可数名词时一般用 what 和 such 而不用 how 和 so:

What wonderful good fortune she was enjoying! 当时她享受着多么好的命运!

Such strange people they are! 他们是如此奇怪的人!

What pretty clothes (you have)! (你穿的是)多么漂亮的衣服呀!

但可以说 How delightful her manners are! (CGEL) 她的礼节风度是多么令人愉快啊! (特殊复数形式表专门意义, 而不指多个事物)

## 8.6 并列形容词间用或不用 and

当两个以上的形容词连用时, 有时候用 and 连结, 有时候不用, 应遵循以下规律。

1) 下列情况下其间用 and 连结:

i. 前置形容词在一个层次上, (如都是性质形容词), 而相互之间是对等关系, 或者是并列关系时, 例如:

a handsome and daring hero 英俊而果敢的英雄

an ambassador extraordinary and plenipotentiary 特命全权大使

ii. 最后两个形容词是表明颜色时:

a white and yellow cap 一顶白黄相间的帽子

red, white and blue flag 红白蓝三色旗

iii. 前面的形容词用来修饰后面的形容词,起强化的作用,并有赞扬含义,例如:

He looks nice and healthy. 他看起来很健康。

His speech was nice and short. 他的发言很简短。

The house stands nice and high. (RHD) 房子高高耸立着。

除了 nice 之外, good, fine 和 lovely 也可以起加强的作用,例如:

He was good and angry (= very angry). 他很生气。

The grass is fine and tall. 草长得高高的。

These peaches are good and ripe. 这些桃子熟透了。

He was good and mad. (DAI) 他完全疯了。

It was lovely and cool in here. 那里面很凉爽。

iv. 两个或两个以上的性质形容词位于 be, seem, appear, look, become 等在连系动词之后时,最后两个形容词之间要用 and 连结:

He was tall, dark, and handsome. 他又高又黑又英俊。

You're like a winter's day: short, dark, and dirty. 你就像冬天的一天:又短又黑又脏。

The weather here was cold, wet and windy. 这儿的天气寒冷,潮湿而多风。

The house looked large and inconvenient. 这所房子看上去大而便于使用。

2) 当几个形容词不在一个层次上,即不是并列关系时不用 and 连接。例如:

a tall young man 一个高个子年轻人  
a big square cake 一大块方型蛋糕  
a very courageous old lady 非常勇敢的老妇人  
these beautiful tiny round crystals 这些漂亮的小圆形晶体  
a typical high Italian building 一座典型的意大利高层建筑物  
a pretty purple silk dress 一件漂亮的紫绸女衣  
a few new major urban highways 几条新的主要城区公路  
a weak small spare old man 一个瘦弱的小老头  
the first beautiful little white Chinese stone bridge 第一座美丽的中国小白石桥

## Exercise 8

### I. 用适当的-ly 形式副词填空,以修饰形容词或分词:

essentially, imaginatively, pleasantly, ferociously, peacefully,  
cruelly, publicly (由政府方面)

1. The new cultural centre is a \_\_\_\_\_ financed project.
2. It will be in a style \_\_\_\_\_ different from the usual urban architecture.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ surrounded by fields and trees.
4. Some traditionalists have been \_\_\_\_\_ critical of the design.
5. The architect said, 'We tried to combine the \_\_\_\_\_ old with the \_\_\_\_\_ new'.

### II. 在形容词后面填上适当的介词:

1. I hope you will prove adequate \_\_\_\_\_ the job.
2. Dorian is never annoyed \_\_\_\_\_ me.
3. She was perfectly capable \_\_\_\_\_ taking care of herself.

4. No one was certain \_\_\_\_\_ his qualifications for the post.
5. We are not concerned \_\_\_\_\_ that matter.
6. John is sure \_\_\_\_\_ passing his exam.
7. The children are responsible \_\_\_\_\_ cleaning their own rooms.
8. The name seems familiar \_\_\_\_\_ me.

Ⅲ. 在某一场合,你和你的朋友谈话,朋友问你下面一些问题,请你用合适的形容词前位修饰语来回答问题。比如: quite, pretty, rather, fairly, reasonably, a bit, a little, slightly, somewhat, hardly, scarcely, not particularly, not altogether, not very, not really.

1. Did you have an interesting time in Egypt?
2. Was it very hot there at that time of the year?
3. Were you in a very large group?
4. What were the hotels like?
5. Did you find it difficult to communicate with people?
6. Were the guides well informed?
7. Was the trip expensive?
8. Didn't you find it tiring all that traveling?
9. I expect you were glad to get home, weren't you?

Ⅳ. 根据左边的提示,用不定式或从句作形容词修饰语完成右边的句子:

- |                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. the fact that:          | We are sure . . .                 |
| 2. the fact that:          | I am proud . . .                  |
| 3. to attain a wish:       | My girl-friend is insistent . . . |
| 4. to have done something: | You are very kind . . .           |

5. to be used every day: French perfume is expensive. . .
6. to have achieved something: Jasmine and Nick are certain. . .
7. to do something regularly: Jasmine and Nick are certain. . .
8. to do something/if you do sth: You must be crazy. . .
9. to do something: I am happy. . .
10. to do something/that you . . . : I am glad. . .

**V. 用 how 来提问, 并回答, 答案中以度量单位词汇修饰形容词:**

1. How long is. . . ?
2. How old. . . ?
3. How deep. . . ?
4. How high . . . ?

## 第九章 表序形容词和序数词

### 9.1 表序形容词 next, last, final 等

在英语形容词中,如同序数词(ordinal number)一样,有一些词具有表示次序的功能,例如 previous, preceding, prior, former, following, latter, next, last, final, ultimate, additional, further, past 等。在意义上,它们本身就表明先后关系。

There is a picture on the previous page. (Frisky) 前一页有一幅图片。

She had returned unknown to me, on the previous afternoon. 我不知道,她已于前一天下午到了。(Cronin)

I remember the war but nothing of the preceding years. 我记得那场战争,但对于以前发生的事情都不记得了。(LDCE)

She looks more like her former self. 她恢复她从前的样子。(ALD)

He will spend the first week of his holiday in France and the next (week) in Italy. 他将在法国度过他的假期的第一周,而在意大利度过第二周。(ALD)

If I miss the next train, I will catch the next after that. 如果我赶不上下一趟火车,我就赶它后面的那一趟。(DCE)

This is your last chance to do it. (ELD) 这是你最后的机会了。  
Z is the final letter in the alphabet. (LDCE) 字母“Z”是字母表中最后一个。

Their ultimate victory is not in question. (Watson)他们已经胜利在望。

**preceding, prior, previous 与 former 的区别:**

**preceding** 与 **following** 相反,限于时间和地点,它通常指紧接着的前面:

There are the events preceding the opening of the story. 这是发生在故事开始前的事件。

He said he had arrived on the preceding night. 他说他是前一天夜间到达的。

**previous** 和 **prior** (与 **subsequent** 相反),常常可以互换,其区别在于:

**prior** 有时暗示比 **previous** 重要,例如 **previous** 表示只是从时间上看早,而 **prior** 则是更强调其重要性,优先于其他的,例如:

This task is prior to all the others. 这项任务比所有其他任务都重要。

Have you had any previous experience? (FWF)以前你有经验吗?

**former** 与 **latter** 相反,甚至比 **prior** 更确定暗示比较,例如,只有在后一个约会时,才可能有 **former** 约会,而 **previous** 或 **prior** 约会就会阻止人们去安排第二个约会。如:

I regret that a previous engagement prevents me from accepting your kind invitation. (ALD)我有约在先,故不能接受您的盛情邀请,实在很遗憾。

A prior agreement prevents me from accepting this. (RHD)我已答应了别人,因此不能接受这一要求。

Did he walk or swim? The former seems more likely. (LDCE)他是走路还是游泳? 前者更有可能。

## 9.2 序数词兼名词、副词

序数词可以兼做名词或副词。

1) 用作主语,带 the 的序数词用作名词保有原词性。可以丢掉 the 的序数词已相当于名词。如:

The first of October is our National Day. 十月一日是我们的国庆节。

One third of the total has been finished. 工作已经完成了三分之一。

Two thirds of the surface of the desk is covered with books. 桌面的三分之二被书占去了。

2) 用作表语,如:

Dr. Li was the first to use acupuncture anesthesia in this hospital.  
李医生是这个医院使用针刺麻醉的第一人。

These plates are seconds. (ALD) 这些盘子是次品。

These are all firsts. 这些都是一等品。

3) 用作宾语,如:

He got a first in Modern Languages. (ALD) 他获现代语言课的第一名。

Does any one want seconds? (LDCE) 谁要添一份菜?

She got a third in chemistry. (RHD) 她化学取得了第三。

4) 用作介词的宾语,如:

He was among the first to arrive. 他是首批到达的。

She shifted into first and drove off. (RHD) 她把车挂到了第一



挡,开走了。

Change from second to third. (ALD) 从二挡换到三挡。

I have written two. I wrote the first quicker than the second. 我写了两个。第一个比第二个写得快。

#### 5) 用作同位语

Who is that man, the first in the front row? 前排第一个人是谁?

#### 6) 用作定语

The first thing to do was to have a meal. (Priestley) 当时首先要做的事就是吃饭。

“You” is a second person pronoun. (LDCE) “你”是第二人称。

#### 7) 序数词兼作副词时,用来作状语。

When did you first meet him? (OCED) 你什么时候和他首次见面?

The recent snowfall was second heavier since the war. (RHD) 最近这次降雪是自从战争以来第二大的。

Lewis came first in the 100 m race. (LDCE) 刘易斯在一百米短跑中赢得第一名。

#### 8) 省略形式多见于谚语中,序数词所做的句子成分可以用补足成分的方法去判定:

First come, first served. (谚语) 先来的,先接待。

Friendship first, competition second. (标语) 友谊第一,比赛第二。

### 9.3 first, second, third 等带与不带-ly 的用法

在表示列举时, 序数词可用作表依次连接的状态语。一般来讲, 如果开始用了 first, 后面列举二、三项时, 既可用 second, third 又可用 secondly, thirdly。因为前者形式一样, 很容易为大多数人接受。而用 secondly, thirdly 亦可, 因为有的人认为 second, third 不如 secondly, thirdly 普通。

Firstly, she did not intend to marry at all; secondly, she meant to go on with her study. (Wells) 首先, 不想结婚, 其次, 她还想继续学习。

We are going to Sandbeach for our holidays first because it has a sandy beach, secondly because our friends will be there. (Neal) 我们想去桑迪比奇度假, 首先因为那沙滩, 其次因为我们的朋友在那儿。

### 9.4 带序数词帝王称号的说法和写法

带序数词帝王称号的写法是: 帝王名称随后加上罗马数字。读法是: 读出罗马数字所表示的序数词, 尤其应该注意的序数词前面的 the 不要丢掉。例如:

英国女王伊利莎白二世 写作: Elizabeth II 读作: Elizabeth the second。

以下是英文序数词和罗马数字对应表:

the first	I	the seventh	VII
the second	II	the eighth	VIII
the third	III	the ninth	IX
the fourth	IV	the tenth	X

the fifth	V	the eleventh	XI
the sixth	VI	the twelfth	XII

## 9.5 几十几世纪、几十年代表达法

在英文年代表表达法中,世纪和年代用序数词来表达。现将这类年代的读法和有关的表示方法列举如下:

the 40's	读作 the forties	40 年代
the 1980's	读作 the nineteen eighties	20 世纪 80 年代
the 19th century	读作 the nineteenth century	19 世纪

想确切地表达某一年代或某一世纪的不同阶段时,可以根据习惯用以下的介词和修饰词:

in the early/mid/late 1980's	在 20 世纪 80 年代初期/ 中期/后期
by the middle of the 1980's	到 20 世纪末 80 年代中期
at the beginning of the present century	本世纪初
the first decade of the 20th century	20 世纪的开头十年

## 9.6 可用基数词代替序数词表示序号

基数词代替序数词表示序号的情况主要有两种;

1) 书的章次、页数、课数和年级、组别等。用序数词表达时,该中心名词均用小写字母,而用基数词代替时,中心名词的第一个字母大写,数字可用阿拉伯字母,亦可用英文基数词表达,且英文数字的第一个字母也是大写,如:

the third chapter	即 Chapter 3 或 Chapter Three
the seventh page	即 Page 7 或 Page Seven

根据习惯章次亦可用罗马数字表达,即以上可用 Chapter III

2) 世界大战的编号,可用基数词代替序数词。

The First World War 即 World War I 读作 World War One。与章、页序数表达法不同的是用序数词表达时,序数词和各个名词的第一个字母都要大写。

## Exercise 9

### I. 用 a 或 the 填补序数词前的空白:

1. Tell me \_\_\_\_\_ first thing that comes into your head.
2. There was \_\_\_\_\_ second answer to this question.
3. Three of the pilots landed safely, but \_\_\_\_\_ fourth was killed.
4. I saw two large dogs and then \_\_\_\_\_ third one, even larger, appeared.
5. On \_\_\_\_\_ second day of our holiday we all fell ill.

### II. 将下列句子译成汉语:

1. He is the last to arrive.
2. She should be the last one to blame.
3. I shall go there next year.
4. He came again the next morning.
5. The next thing he heard was an insistent knocking on the door of his room.
6. Brenda took the last bite of her omelet.

### Ⅲ. 根据括号中的汉语填空:

1. I paid \$ 7,500 for \_\_\_\_\_. (为了三分之一的厂子,我已花了 7,500 美元。)
2. He raced \_\_\_\_\_ of the pitch. (他跑过了那球场四分之三的距离。)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ of all the lawyers in the world practice in the United States. (世界上四分之三的律师在美国开业。)
4. I have written \_\_\_\_\_ of the book. (这本书我已写完了五分之一。)
5. They represented only \_\_\_\_\_ of the foreign population in 1982. (他们仅代表 1982 年五分之二的外国人。)
6. He could only finish \_\_\_\_\_. (他仅仅只能获得第五名。)
7. The design is based on two assumptions. \_\_\_\_\_ is that not all people have the same interests and abilities. (设计建立在两个假设基础之上。其一是并非所有的人兴趣相同,能力一样。)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ reaction was to hit him, but he was old. \_\_\_\_\_ was to resign. (我的第一反应是揍他,但他年纪已大。后来我想到辞职。)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ annual show is going to be our finest. (这第四届年度展示会将是我们最出色的一届。)
10. There was \_\_\_\_\_ reason for haste. (事急着办,还有第三个理由。)

## 第十章 表数形容词与基数词

### 10.1 形容词 double, multiple, only, sole, several, single 等表示数量

在英语中,有些词是形容词,但是,从意义本身看,能够表示数量。例如 double(两个), multiple(多个), only(唯一), several(几个), single(单一), sole(独一)等。例如:

There was a double knock at the door. (ALD) 门口有连续的两下敲门声。

He is a man of multiple interests. 他是一个有多方面兴趣的人。  
That's the only reason. You can't blame anyone. (Greene) 那是唯一的原因,你不能责怪任何人。

My friend speaks several languages. 我的朋友讲好几种语言。

Andrew had a single purpose, namely to make money.  
(Henderson) 安德鲁只有一个目的,那就是赚钱。

I am the sole child of my parents. (Frisky) 我是父母唯一的孩子。

### 10.2 数词兼代词 one

1) one 用作数词时,指“一”,和其他的基数词一样,用作限定词,如 one boy;或者用作名词短语的中心词,如 one of the boys。在关联结构中,如 one (the one)... the other 指“二者之一”,one after the

other 或 one after another 用来指“一个接着一个”，例如：

What the teacher said seemed to go in at one ear and out at the other. 老师所说的话好像从一边耳朵进去，再从另一边耳朵出来。

We overtook one car after another. 我们超过了一辆又一辆汽车。

## 2) one 做代词

one 做代词时，可以代替名词单数；代替名词复数时，用 ones。

A: I'm looking for a book on grammar. 我正在找一本语法书。

B: Is this the one you mean? 这是你指的那本书吗？

代词 one 可以用限定词、修饰语来限制，如：

the one I like 我喜欢的那个

the ones on the shelf 架子上的那些

代词 one 用不定冠词 a 来修饰时，强调 a single one，或者强调“可惊叹的一位”（愚蠢、粗鲁、可笑等等）。

He used to have a lot of friends, but after that he hadn't got a one. 他曾有许多朋友，但从那以后，他一个朋友也没有。

The patient in the end bed is a (real) one, I can tell you.

(LDCE) 我告诉你，那边床的病人真是个人物。

He is a one, your son, never one of trouble. (ALD) 你的儿子真棒，从来不惹麻烦。

代词 one 前面既没有定冠词，又没有不定冠词时相当于以前提到的名词：

Tomorrow I'll go to the bookshop and buy the dictionary. Do you want one? 明天，我将去书店买词典，你想要一本吗？

### 10.3 可用与必用 a 代 one 的情况; one 等数词用于成语

1) 可以用 a 代替 one 时, 有以下三种情况:

i. 在计算、测量时间、距离、重量等时, 可以用 a 代替 one:

a dollar/one dollar 一美元

a third/one third 三分之一

I bought a/one kilo of potatoes. 我买了一公斤土豆。

a/one mile or two 一两英里

ii. 表达整百、整千, 用于一个数字的开头时, 可用 a 代替 one:

a thousand /one thousand

iii. 在有些习语中, 用 a /an 或 one 都可以, 如:

at a /one blow 一下子

in a /one word 简言之

to be of a/ one mind 看法一致

a /one hundred percent 十足地

2) 必须用 a 而不能用 one 时, a 表示类别

i. 泛指一类的人或物, 用在主语中

A knife is tool for cutting with. (Thomson) 刀是切割工具。

Does a dog have a keen sense of hearing? 狗有非常灵敏的听觉吗? (Wood)

ii. 泛指一个人的职业、宗教、身份等

The king made him a lord. 国王封他为贵族。

His father is a carpenter. 他父亲是木匠。



iii. 否定词后起准数词(quasi-number)的作用,带有特定感情色彩,强调否定。

I won't drink a drop. 一滴我也不喝。

He won't lift a finger to help you. 他一点儿也不想帮你。

iv. 在某些习语中,如果用 a 代替 one,意义不同,如:as a man (就他的人品而论),as one man(大家一致地),at a time(每次),at one time(从前有一个时期),例如:

At one time, we met every day. 从前有一个时期,我们每天都见面。

Carry them three at a time. 每次拿三个。

v. 两个数词搭配在一起构成的成语

one in a thousand 千里挑一的,极优秀的人物

one or two 一两个,一些

have one over the eight 多喝了些,醉了

Two wrongs don't make a right. (ODEP) 不能用别人的错误来掩饰自己的错误。[另义:以错对错(以怨报怨)]

It's six of one and half a dozen of the other. 半斤八两

nine times out of ten 十有八九的

ten to one 十之八九的,极有可能的

a hundred to one shot/chance 极小的可能,渺茫的机会

a hundred (thousand/million)and one 很多

vi. 数词复数在成语中的使用

The baby was creeping about on all fours. (DAI) 这个孩子到处乱爬。

On the day before wedding, the whole house was at sixes and

sevens. (Chambers) 婚礼的前一天, 整个房子都乱七八糟的。  
dressed up to the nines(ALD) 穿着非常考究或奢侈

The only rooks we see are occasional migrants passing overhead in twos and threes. 我们所能看到的白嘴鸦是只偶见从头顶飞过的三三两两的候鸟。

## 10.4 万万, 百万, 千, 百等大数的读法

书面英语在使用英语数词的同时, 大量使用阿拉伯数字, 但读法与中文对阿拉伯数字的读法有很大不同, 这对中国学生是个难点。

读这种阿拉伯万以上数时, 首先要学会每三位分一级的读法。

### 1) 单一基数词

1	one
2	two
3	three
4	four
5	five
6	six
7	seven
8	eight
9	nine
10	ten
百	hundred
百万	million
十亿	billion

### 2) 两位数表达法

i. 除 11(eleven), 12(twelve) 以外, 从 13 到 19 均由相应的个位

数加后缀 -teen 构成。注意其中 13(thirteen), 不是 threeteen; 15 (fifteen), 不是 fiveteen; 18(eighteen) 不是 eightteen。

ii . 20 ~ 90 均是后缀结尾, 注意 twenty, thirty, 不是 twoty, threety; forty 不是 fourty; fifty, 不是 fivety 的拼写,

iii . 21 以上的十位数, 要在十位和个位数之间加连字符, 如 37 (thirty-seven)。

### 3) 三位数“几百几十几”

在读“几百几十几”时, 在“几百”和“几十几”之间加 and, 如:

120                    a hundred and twenty

121                    a hundred and twenty-one

在读“几百零几”时, 在“几百”和“零几”之间加 and, 如:

102                    a hundred and two

由以上 1)、2)、3) 可以了解三位数和三位以内数字的读法。而大数的读法就是以此为基础的。因为任何一个大数都可以“用每三个数位分成一组”的方法来分。其分法如下: 从右边第一位, 即个位开始, 每三位用逗号分开, 这些逗号从右向左, 逗号前的那位分别读作 thousand, million, billion。然后三个数字组成的小单元各自按三位数(见上 3)来读即可。

283, 283, 283, 283 读作 two hundred and eighty-three billion, two hundred and eighty-three million, two hundred and eighty-three thousand, two hundred and eighty-three

## 10.5 零的多种表达方式

零在英语的不同场合, 其读法也有许多不同。

1) nought, naught 零, 乌有。nought 属于英式英语(BrE), 用于一般计数中实指数字 0; naught 多用于比喻“无用”“无效”, 可用于英式英语(BrE)和美式英语(AmE), 有时代替 nought 指零。

How many noughts are there at the end of this number? (Wood)

这个数字末尾有多少 0?

Put two noughts after a six to make six hundred. (Thorndike) 在

6 后写两个 0 构成 600。

There was naught to be done in emergency but wait. (URW) 在

发生那种不测情况之下, 人们束手无策, 只能等待了。(这里用于比喻义, 不能用 nought)

2) zero 一般用于科技英语仪表的读数, 如温度等, 不能将其用于比喻, 仅表示“等于或达到零”, “减少或下降至零”。; 在 AmE 中, 还用于一般计数及竞赛中。

It was five below zero last night. 昨天是零下五度。(LLCE)

ten with one zero after it 10 后面带个 0 (Schibsbye)

Division (except by zero) is always possible. (ib) 任何数总能除了又除(只是不能用零来除)。

Heavy fog reduced visibility to zero. (URW) 浓雾使可见度降到零。

3) oh/o 用于连读出一串数词, 连续数字读法用简便借音。如电话号码和门牌号码、房间、年号等。

My account number is four one three two six O six nine. 我的帐号是 41326069。(Swan)

4) nil 在英国英语中, 用于竞赛比分及喻指零。  
在足球比赛中:

The result of the match was 4-0 (读作 four nil 或 four to nothing). 比赛的结果为 4 比 0。

在网球或羽毛球比赛中,

The score is 30-0(读作 thirty love). 比分为 30 比 0。

All efforts were nil against his greater experience. (URW) 面对他更丰富的经验, 我们的全部努力一无所获。

5) 有时用 no, none, nothing 来表示零, 或无。

We had four lectures last week, but none this week. 上周我们有四个讲座, 但这周一个也没有。

Multiply six by nothing, and the result is nothing. 6 乘以 0 等于 0。

## 10.6 小数与分数的读法

### 1) 分数(fractions)

i. 一般简单的分数, 通常用基数词读分子, 序数词读分母; 当分子为 2 及以上数字时, 分母要用序数词 + -s 的形式

$1/3$  读作 one third 或 a third

$2/3$  读作 two thirds

### ii. 几个分数的特殊表示法

$1/2$  读作 one half 或 a half 而不读作 one second

$1/4$  读作 one quarter 或 one fourth

$3/4$  读作 three quarters 或 three fourths

整数和分数之间须用 and 连接,

$5\frac{1}{2}$  读作 five and a half

$8\frac{3}{4}$  读作 eight and three quarters

### iii. over 的使用

在数学英语中,或者一般英语提到较复杂的分数时,多用两个基数词中加 over 来读,例如:

1/2 读作 one over two

23/75 读作 twenty-three over seventy-five

### iv. 带有计量单位的分数

3/4 meter 读作 three quarters of a meter(较少说 a three-quarter meter;表分数的两个词直接作定语,中加连词号)

1½ hours 读作 one and a half hours 或 one hour and a half

注意:分数做前置定语时,3/4(其中 quarter 单数)和 2/3(其中 thirds 复数)不同,比较:

a one-third mile 三分之一英里(用 one,后有连词号)

a three-quarter majority 四分之三的多数(用单数 quarter,因名词作定语通常用单数形式,包括“数词—名词”型的复合名词性定语,比较 ten-year-olds “十岁的孩子们”)

a two-thirds mile 三分之二英里(用复数的 thirds,合乎作分母的数词用复数形式的惯例)

### v. 百分数

百分数中数字读作基数词(有时有小数),百分号%读作 per cent:

5% 读作 five per cent

0.8% 读作 (naught) point eight per cent

200% 读作 two hundred per cent

### vi. 小数(decimals)

小数顺序读整数部分(按基数词来读),读小数点(point),小数点后小数部分(要一位一位数字单独读出):

8.23 读作 eight point two three

88.51 读作 eighty-eight point five one

0.5 读作 zero/nought point five 或者 point five

0.01 读作 nought point nought one 或者 zero point zero one

英国英语多把 0 读作 nought, 美国英语多把 0 读作 zero

## 10.7 计算的口头说法示例

计算(calculation)就是加、减、乘、除等运算过程。其数学的表达形式一目了然,但用英语说出的说法却有多种,现举例如下:

1) 加法(addition)

$2 + 3 = 5$  读作 Two and three make/makes/are/is five. 或 Two plus three equals five. (plus 属于介词, three 为介词宾语, 不是并列主语)

$2 + 5 + 7 = 14$  读作 The sum of two and five and seven is fourteen. (这种读法也可用于两个数字相加)

$80 + 40 + 38 = 158$  读作 Eighty, forty and thirty-eight added together are/make one hundred and fifty-eight. (这种方法常用于较大的数)

$150 + 20 = 170$  读作 One hundred and fifty increased by twenty is one hundred and seventy.

$10 + 5 = 15$  读作 If you add ten to five, you get fifteen.

2) 减法(subtraction)

$7 - 3 = 4$  读作 Three from seven leaves four. Seven minus three equals/is/ leaves/gives four. (minus 属于介词) 或者 Seven decreased by three is four. Take three from seven and four remains.

ii . 用于较大的数

$2683 - 553 = 2130$  读作 Five hundred and fifty-three taken/  
subtracted from two thousand six hundred and eighty-three  
leaves two thousand one hundred thirty

3) 乘(multiplication)

i . 乘数为 0、1、2 时

$1 \times 0 = 0$  读作 Once nought is nought 或 One multiplied by  
nought is/equals nought.

$1 \times 1 = 1$  读作 Once one is one.

$1 \times 2 = 2$  读作 Once two is two.

$2 \times 1 = 2$  读作 Twice one is/are two.

ii . 其他

$3 \times 2 = 6$  读作 Three times two are/is/equals to six. (times 通  
常看作介词, times two 为介词短语, 修饰主语 three; 所以如  
果是表单一量的 three, 句子谓语动词就用单数形式; 偶见动  
词用 are 属非规范语法。) 或 Three multiplied by two is/  
equals/makes six.

$2 \times 5 = 10$  读作 Two fives make ten.

iii . 对于较大的数

$70 \times 82 = 5740$  读作 The product of 70 and 82 is 5740.

4) 除(division)

i . 能除尽时

$18 \div 3 = 6$  读作 Three into eighteen is/goes six 或 Eighteen  
divided by three is/makes/equals to six.



有时不需要说出结果时,可以说 Eighteen divides by three. 或者 Three goes into eighteen.

ii. 不能除尽时

$5 \div 2 = 2$  余 1 读作 Five divided by two gives two and one remainder.

5) 关于比例、乘方和开方的读法

3:4 读作 the ratio of three to four

$18:3 = 6$  读作 the ratio of eighteen to three equals six

$\sqrt{9} = 3$  读作 the square root of nine is three

$\sqrt[3]{8} = 2$  读作 the cubic root of eight is two

## 10.8 年、月、日不同说法与记法

1) 年份

四位或三位数字年份的读法通常是分成两部分来读,第“(几千)几百”为前一部分,“几十几年”为后一部分。

公元前 450 年 读作 four hundred fifty B. C.

公元 921 年 读作 (A. D.) nine twenty-one (公元 1000 年前可以加 A. D.)

1900 年 读作 nineteen hundred (除整几百年外,多略 hundred)

1902 年 读作 nineteen (hundred) and two

2000 年 读作 the year two thousand (除整几千,多略 thousand)

只有一二位数字的年份因为接近基督诞生之年,常加 A. D./AD

现在也有后加 A.D. 者;表示公元前的 B.C./BC 总加于年代之后。如:

Augustus was born in 63BC and died in AD14. (BC 代表 Before Christ;AD 代表拉丁语 Anno Domino = in the year-of- the-lord)

年代复数的“延伸”意义,年代复数指 0 后的十年、00 后的百年:  
in the 1980s (20 世纪 80 年代,即 1980-1989) nineteen-eighties  
in the 1910s (20 世纪 10 年代) nineteen-tens  
in the 1600s (17 世纪) sixteen hundreds  
during the 1900s(20 世纪初)nineteen hundreds  
a woman in her 30s (30 多岁的女子) thirties  
a girl in her early/mid/late teens (一个十三四 / 十五六 / 十七八的姑娘)

## 2) 月、日

5<sup>th</sup> October 读作 the fifth of October

October 5<sup>th</sup> 读作 October the fifth

当年、月、日一起表达时,要注意英美的不同习惯以免造成误解,如:

10/5/73 为 October 5<sup>th</sup>, 1973 (美国英语)

10/5/73 为 10<sup>th</sup> May, 1973 (英国英语)

逗号用于年份前;但现有不用逗号的趋势。

表示月、日、年时,月份可用固定的缩写形式。以下为各月份及其缩写:

January	Jan.	July	——
February	Feb.	August	Aug.
March	Mar.	September	Sep.
April	Apr.	October	Oct.
May	——	November	Nov.
June	——	December	Dec.

### 3) 钟点

划分：一昼夜以正午(noon)为界分为前后各 12 个小时。午前的时刻用 a. m. 表示, 午后的时刻用 p. m. 表示。在不会引起误解的情况下可以省略 a. m. 或 p. m.。按习惯分别译为凌晨(后夜)、上午、下午、晚上。用于广播报时、旅行时刻表、官方公报、军事通讯时, 一昼夜按 24 小时制计时, 不说 o' clock 而说 hours。见下:

中文	BrE	AmE	24 小时制写法读法 *
上午/早八点	8 o' clock a. m. (仅几点整才用 o. clock 一词)	8 o' clock a. m.	08:00 eight hundred hours
早八点零五	5 past 8 a. m. (可无圆点)	5 after 8 a. m.	08:05 eight oh/o five
早八点一刻	quarter past 8 a. m.	quarter after 8 a. m.	08:15 eight fifteen
早八点半	half past 8 a. m. (大写多无圆点)	half after 8 a. m.	08:30 eight thirty
下午/晚八点	8 o' clock p. m.	8 o' clock p. m.	20:00 twenty hundred hours
晚上差一刻九点	quarter to nine	quarter to/till/of nine	20:45 twenty forty-five
晚上差五分九点	five to 9 p. m.	five of 9	20:55 twenty fifty-five

\* 注: 国际标准化组织(The International Organization for Standardisation)曾建议 08:00 应读作 eight hours, 16:30 应读作 sixteen hours thirty。但目前 24 小时制的通行读法, 仍仿照年代读法, 整时数带 hundred(相当于年代的整百年数);“几点几分”分两部分读出, 后面加 hours(不用 o' clock), 如:

00 00/ 00.00 /00:00 zero hour/zero hours(零点整 zero 后必加 hour/hours)

00 10/ 00.10 /00:00 zero ten (hours) (“几分”后也可加 hours, 但多略)

01 00/ 01.00/ 01:00 (oh/o) hundred (hours)(hundred 后多加 hours, 可略, 开头的 oh/o 多略)

09 03/ 09.03/ 09:03 nine (hundred) oh/o three(hours)(依据以上原则, 多省略为 nine oh/o three)

### 12 小时制和 24 小时制表示方法对照表:

the 12-hour clock	the 24-hour clock
1 a. m.	0100 hrs(oh one hundred hours)
3 a. m.	0300 hrs(three hundred hours)
5.30 a. m.	0530 hrs(five thirty hours)
7.15 a. m.	715 hrs(seven fifteen hours)
10 a. m.	1000 hrs(ten hundred hours)
11.5 a. m.	1105 hrs(eleven oh/o five hours)
12 noon	1200 hrs(twelve hundred hours)
1 p. m.	1300 hrs(thirteen hundred hours)
4 p. m.	1600 hrs(sixteen hundred hours)
8 p. m.	2000 hrs(twenty hundred hours)
10 p. m.	2200 hrs(twenty-two hundred hours)
11.45 p. m.	2345 hrs(twenty-three forty-five hours)
12 p. m./midnight	2400 hrs(twenty-four hundred hours)

It's two minutes past/after five. (IEU) (所指分钟数非 5 的倍数,通常加 minutes)现在是五点零二分。

It's twenty-two minutes to six. 现在是五点三十八分。

## 10.9 英美金额表达法

### 1) 英国货币金额表达

英国货币单位为 pound (英镑) 和 penny (便士)。以前曾有 shilling (先令), 但从 1971 年开始使用新的币制后就不再使用。

英国货币基本单位镑的符号为 £ (区别于“lb”, 表示重量单位的“磅”), 书写时写在数字之前, 读数时放在数字后; penny 简写为 p, 都放在数字之后, 如:

£ 328.43 读作 three hundred and twenty-eight pounds forty-three (pence)

注意: pence 为 penny 的复数形式之一, 表示币值的多少; 当表示 1 便士的硬币有多少枚时, 用 pennies, 所以:

5 pence 5 便士(币值)

5 pennies 5 个 1 便士的硬币

## 2) 美国货币金额表达法

美国的货币单位为 dollar (\$) 和 cent (¢), 同以上 1) 中所讲, 书写时, \$ 放在前, 读数时, 放在数字之后, 而 ¢ 都放在数字之后, 如:

\$ 23.12 读作 twenty-three dollars and twelve cents

\$ 0.75 读作 seventy-five cents

## 10.10 时间、距离、面积、体积、重量等数量

时间、距离、面积、重量的表达要由数字和单位构成。其中单位汉英名称及其与主单位的对照如下:

类别	汉语名称	英语名称	缩写	对主单位的比
长度	米	meter	m.	主单位
	公里	kilometer	k. m.	1000 m.
面积	平方米	square meter	sq. m.	主单位
	公顷	hectare	ha.	10,000 sq. m.
	平方公里	square kilometer	sq. k. m.	1,000,000 sq. m.
重量 和质 量	毫克	milligram	m. g.	1/1,000,000 k. g.
	克	gram	g.	1/1,000 k. g.
	千克	kilogram	k. g.	主单位
	吨	metric ton	m. t. (或 t)	1,000 k. g.
容量	毫升	milliliter	m. l.	1/1,000l.
	升	liter	l.	主单位

除以上表中所列之外,各个单位与英制及美制关系如下:

类别	汉语名称	英语名称	缩写	折合公制
长度	英里	mile	mi.	= 1.6093 公里
	码	yard	yd.	= 0.9144 米
	英尺	foot	ft.	= 0.3048 米
	英寸	inch	in.	= 2.54 厘米
面积	平方英里	square mile	sq. mi	= 2.59 平方公里
	平方码	square yard	sq. yd	= 0.836 平方米
	平方英尺	square foot	sq. ft	= 929.03 平方厘米
	平方英寸	square inch	sq. in	= 6.452 平方厘米
重量	吨	ton	t	= 1000 千克(公斤)
重量	磅	pound	lb( = 16 oz. )	= 0.454 千克(公斤)
	盎司	ounce	oz.	= 28.35 克
容量 (干量)	加仑	gallon	gal. ( = 4qt. )	= 4.546 升
	夸脱	quart	qt. ( = 2pt )	英 = 1.136 升 美 = 1.101 升
	品脱	pint	pt.	英 = 0.568 升 美 = 0.55 升
容量 (液体)	加仑	gallon	gal. ( = 4qt )	英 = 4.546 升 美 = 3.785 升
	夸脱	quart	qt. ( = 2pt )	英 = 1.136 升 美 = 0.946 升
	品脱	pint	pt.	英 = 0.568 升 美 = 0.473 升

英语表示时间、距离、面积、体积和重量时,使用方法同汉语类似,把单位名称放于数字之后。

The area of this floor is 600 square meters. 这层楼的面积为 600 平方米。

The river is nearly 800 meters in width. 这条河将近 800 米宽。

The car runs at the rate of 60 kilometers an hour. 这辆车以每小时 60 公里的速度行驶。

By the end of this week, they will have poured ten thousand cubic meters of concrete. 到本周末, 他们将可浇灌 1 万方的混凝土。

The first man-made satellite of our country weighed 173 kilos. (kilograms 之略) 我国第一颗人造卫星重 173 千克。

The girl is very tall — she is six foot two. (此处为非正式用语, 正式用语为 six feet two) 这个女孩儿很高, 有 6 英尺 2 英寸。

### 10.11 复数形式的 dozens, hundreds, thousands, millions, billions 等

ten, dozen, hundred, thousand, million 等词的复数形式后常接介词短语, 用来表示不确定的数目:

tens of thousands of people	成千上万的人
hundreds of students	数百名学生
thousands upon thousands of people	成千成万的人
millions of inhabitants	数百万居民

这其中 million 的名词性较强, 所以可以说 a million of times (成百万倍), two million(s) of people (2 百万人) several millions of people (RHD) 等, 但前四个数词没有表示确定数目加词尾-s 和介词 of 的用法, 不说:

- \* a dozen of eggs (应为 a dozen eggs)
- \* two hundreds (应为 two hundred)
- \* two thousands of demonstrators (应为 two thousand demonstrators)
- \* several thousands of people (应为 several thousand of people)

(Swan)

如果所表示的意义很清楚,则可以省掉 of + 名词短语:

Hundreds of thousands are homeless. 几十万人无家可归。

In the Jia family, if you count the servants they must have several hundreds. 如果你数一数贾府的仆人,那肯定有好几百人。

## 10.12 其他约略数额表达法

1) 表达近似数量,“大约(多少)”或“(多少)左右”可用 about, approximately, roughly, or so, some, round:

I shall be with you in about twenty minutes. (Davies) 我大约 20 分钟后回来。

The velocity of electricity is approximately 187,000 miles per second. 电的传播速度大约是每秒 187,000 英里。

After taking some 20 doses, the patient recovered. 服药约 20 剂后,病人痊愈了。

The population of London is roughly 8,000,000. (或 The population is 8,000,000 in the rough.) 伦敦的人口约有 800 万。(URW)

There will be 1,000 or so people at the meeting. 会上将有 1000 人左右。

The journey will take around ten days. 这次旅行需要 10 天左右。

They arrived about/round 5 o'clock. (LDCE) 他们大约 5 点钟到。(美国英语较多使用 around, 英国英语较多使用 about, 较少使用 round; 而比单个介词 round 用得多一些的是以下 round 的搭配用法)



A new roof will cost round about £ 1,000. (ALD) 换新顶蓬需要 1,000 英镑左右。

Round about a hundred people are expected to attend the conference. (Wood) 大概一百人要出席这次大会。

It will be somewhere round fifty pounds. (RHD) 大概要有五十磅。

除以上词语表约略以外,还有几种替换说法:

They'll be here in a matter of a few minutes. (Wood) 他们仅仅几分钟后就到。

He lost a sum in the neighborhood of \$ 500. 他丢了大约 500 美元的钱。

I can't give you the exact figure, but in round numbers it was fifty or sixty. 我不能告诉你一个确切的数字,但粗略说来,大约是 50 或 60。

It must be something like eleven o'clock. 现在该是 11 点钟左右了吧。

It's an hour's drive, more or less. 那大约是开车 1 小时的路程。

2) 表达约略数额,还可用表虽然不到而“将近”意思的词语,例如:

It's nearly/almost eleven o'clock. 现在将近 11 点钟。

Close to a hundred experiments have been made. 已经进行了近 100 次实验。

3) 用表示估计的动词 estimate, approximate 等

The yearly output approximates to 800,000 tons. 年产量约计 80 万吨。

An estimated 6.5 million U. S. citizens watched the telecast. 估计 650 万美国公民观看了这一电视节目。

Rockfeller's personal fortune has been estimated at between \$ 200 million and \$ 250 million. 洛克菲勒的个人财富据估算为 2 亿到 2.5 亿美元。

## Exercise 10

### I. 选词填空:

1. My mother has baked \_\_\_\_\_ (two dozen, chocolate, delicious) cakes for tea today.
2. The devotees had to climb \_\_\_\_\_ (five hundred, steep) steps to reach the temple on top of that hill.
3. She bought herself \_\_\_\_\_ (silk, colorful, half a dozen) scarves at the supermarket.
4. Can you lend \_\_\_\_\_ (four, long) rulers to the pupils in the next class?
5. That man owns \_\_\_\_\_ (several, thoroughbred 纯种的, racing) horses, and he spends a lot of money on them.

### II. 改正表数量名词的用法错误:

1. Shortly after the accident, two dozens police were sent to the spot to keep order.
2. The Millicent Rogers Museum houses(收藏着) five thousands pieces of Hispanic and American Indian jewelry, textiles, and other objects documenting the vibrancy of these two cultures.
3. Scientists estimate that as many as two hundred millions visible meteors enter the Earth's atmosphere every day.

4. George Washington Carver found hundred of uses for the peanut, the sweet potato, and soybean and thus stimulated the cultivation of these crops.
5. Her books still give pleasure to million.
6. That store sells several thousands dresses every month.

Ⅲ. 在下列计算机语料库的检索行中(非完整句), 确定 one 是否为数字。如为数字回答 Yes, 如果不是数词(而是代词)回答 No:

1. I would import at least one small load of furniture.
  2. thus equipped set off one August day, the sun as hot
  3. is relatively rare that one sees the animals themselves
  4. now, however, there was one incident that came near to
  5. my living as a painter. One autumn I was staying with
  6. a puppy bouncing around one in a frenzy of excited yaps(狗的汪汪叫声)
  7. afterwards, saying that one of the crew would assist us
  8. for a cottage, an empty one, miles from anywhere, or at
- 1 \_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_

Ⅳ. 观察下列含有 half 的句子哪些是正确的, 正确句子表示的是几种意思? 将答案写在分成二或三列的表中, 错误句子在表下注明:

1. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed half a loaf.  
我弟弟要分一份时, 我已经把一块面包吞下一半。(指仅有的一块或多块中的一块)
2. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed a half-loaf.

3. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed one half-loaf.

我弟弟要分一份时,我已经把一个“半块”面包吞下。(仅有半块或多块中有个半块)

4. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed half the loaf.

5. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed half of the loaf.

6. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed a half of the loaf.

7. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed one half of the loaf.

我弟弟要分一份时,我已经把那块面包吞下一半。

8. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed half loaf.

9. When my bother asked for a share, I had swallowed half of loaf. (后2句是何意义见参考答案)

## 例句出处略语表 (主要参考书目)

- ALD:** *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*, Oxford University Press, 1980/1989/1995
- Alexander, L. G.,** *Longman English Grammar*, Longman Group Limited, New York, 1988
- Bolinger, D.,** *The Phrasal Verb in English*, Harvard University Press, Massachusetts, 1971
- Brewer:** *Brewer's Dictionary of Phrase and Fable* (Revised Edition), Cassell Ltd., London, 1981
- Carver, D. J.,** *Collins English Learner's Dictionary*, Collins, London, 1974
- CDE:** *The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English*, John Benjamins Publishing Company, Philadelphia, 1986
- CGE:** **G. Leech et al,** *A Communicative Grammar of English*, Longman, London, 1975
- CGEL:** **R. Quirk et al,** *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, Longman, London, 1985
- Chambers:** *Chambers Universal Learner's Dictionary*, W&R Chambers Ltd., Edinburgh, 1980
- Close, R. A.,** *A Reference Grammar for Students of English*, Longman, London, 1975
- COD:** *The Concise Oxford Dictionary of Current English*, Oxford University Press, 1976/1982

- Collins:** *Collins Cobuild English Language Dictionary*, Collins Birmingham University International Language Database, Klett, 1987
- DAI:** **M. T. Boatner**, *A Dictionary of American Idioms*, Barron's Educational Series Inc., New York, 1975
- DCIE:** *Oxford Dictionary of Current Idiomatic English*, Oxford University Press, 1975/1983
- DPWE:** **H. Shaw**, *Dictionary of Problem Words and Expressions*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1975
- Eckersley, C. E. et al**, *A Comprehensive English Grammar*, Longman, London, 1961
- EGS:** **L. G. Alexander et al**, *English Grammatical Structure*, Longman, London, 1977
- Evans, B.**, *A Dictionary of American Usage*, Random House, New York, 1975
- Fowler, W. H.**, *A Dictionary of Modern English Usage*, Oxford University Press, 1965
- FWF:** *Editors of the Reader's Digest, Family Word Finder*, The Reader's Digest Association Ltd., New York, 1978
- GCE:** **R. Quirk et al**, *A Grammar of Contemporary English*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1973
- GSL:** **M. West**, *A General Service List of English Words*, Longman, London, 1977
- Halsey, W. D.**, *Macmillan Contemporary Dictionary*, Macmillan Publishing Co., Inc., London, 1979
- Hayakawa, S. I.**, *Cassell's Modern Guide to Synonyms and Related Words*, Cassell Ltd., London, 1979
- Hill, L. A.**, *Prepositions and Adverbial Particles*, Oxford

- University Press, 1968
- Hornby, A. S.**, *Guide to Patterns and Usage in English*, Oxford University Press, 1975
- IEU: T. Todd & I. Hancock**, *International English Usage*, Croom Helm Ltd., Kent, 1986
- Jespersen, O.**, *A Modern English Grammar on Historical Principles*, Munksgaard, Copenhagen, 1909-1949
- LDCE: Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English**, Longman Group Limited, London, 1978/1995
- LDEI: Longman Dictionary of English Idioms**, Longman Group Limited, 1979
- LDPV: Longman Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs**, Longman Group Limited, 1983
- Leech, G.**, *Meaning and the English Verb*, Longman, London, 1971
- LLAV: Longman Language Activator, the World's First Production Dictionary**, 1993; 1997年上海外语教育出版社版英文本书名汉译《朗文英语联想活用词典》(世界上第一部联想生成表达词典)
- LLCE: Longman Lexicon of Contemporary English**, Longman Group Limited, 1981
- NDEC: Kenkyusha's New Dictionary of English Collocations**, Kenkyusha Ltd., Tokyo, 1958
- NODE: The New Oxford Dictionary of English**, Oxford University Press, 1998/2001
- ODEP: The Oxford Dictionary of English Proverbs**, Oxford University Press, 1982
- ODPD: The Oxford-Duden Pictorial English-Japanese Dictionary**,

- Oxford University Press, 1983
- OED:** *The Oxford English Dictionary (& Supplements)*, Oxford University Press, 1928-1976
- Onions, C. T.,** *The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology*, Oxford University Press, 1982
- Palmer, F. R.** *The English Verb*, Longman, London, 1974
- Palmer, H. E.,** *A Grammar of English Words*, Longman, London, 1964
- Partridge, E.,** *Usage and Abusage: A Guide to Good English*, Penguin, Harmondsworth, 1973
- POD:** *The Pocket Oxford Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 1969
- RHD:** *The Random House Dictionary of the English Language*, Oxford University Press, 1973/1987
- RWRT: J. E. Kahn et al,** *The Right Word at the Right Time*, The Reader's Digest Association Limited, London, 1985
- Schibsbye, K.,** *A Modern English Grammar*, Oxford University Press, 1979
- Seidl, J. et al,** *English Idioms*, Oxford University Press, 1988
- SOD:** *The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 1973
- Swan, M.,** *Practical English Usage*, Oxford University Press, 1980
- Thomson, A. J. et al,** *A Practical English Grammar*, Oxford University Press, 1987
- Tracey, R. D.,** *Correcting Common Errors in English*, Littlefield, New Jersey, 1980
- UCGE: A. Downing et el,** *A University Course in English Grammar*, Prentice Hall, London, 1992
- UGE: R. Quirk et al,** *A University Grammar of English*, Longman



- Group Limited, London, 1974
- URW:** *Editors of the Reader's Digest, Use the Right Word*, Funk & Wagnalls, New York, 1971
- Watson, O.**, *Longman Modern English Dictionary*, Longman Group Limited, London, 1976
- WBD:** *The World Book Dictionary*, Doubleday & Company, Inc., Chicago, 1981
- WDS:** *Webster's Dictionary of Synonyms*, Merriam-Webster Inc., Springfield U.S.A., 1951
- Web. 3:** *Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language*, Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc., Springfield, 1981
- WNDS:** *Webster's New Dictionary of Synonyms*, Merriam-Webster Inc., Springfield, 1978
- WNNCD :** *Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary*, Merriam-Webster Inc., Publishers, Springfield, 1983
- WTNCD:** *Webster's Tenth New Collegiate Dictionary*, Merriam-Webster Inc., Publishers, Springfield, 1995
- WNWD:** *Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language*, Simon and Schuster, Inc., New York, 1972/1994
- Wood, F. T.**, *Prepositional Idioms*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., 1979; *Current English Usage*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1981; *English Verbal Idioms*, Macmillan & Co. Ltd., London, 1964
- Wyld, H. C.**, *The Universal Dictionary of the English Language*, Routledge & Kegan Paul Limited, London, 1960
- Young, D.**, *The Structure of English Clauses*, Hutchinson, London, 1980

Zandvoort, R. W., *A Handbook of English Grammar*, Longman, London, 1948

汉英:北京外国语大学《汉英词典》,外研社,北京,1995;

吴景荣、程镇球《新时代汉英大词典》,商务印书馆,北京,2001

井上:日本 井上义昌等《英米语用法辞典》,开拓社,东京,1960

小西:日本 小西友七等《英语前置词活用辞典》,大修馆书店,东京,1974;

《英语基本动词辞典》,Kenkyusha, Tokyo, 1980

岩波:日本 中岛文雄等《岩波英和大辞典》,岩波书店,东京,1971

- \* 出自知名作家、社会活动家的例句,后只注明其姓氏,如:Christie, Churchill, Dickens, Dreiser, Lincoln, London, Shaw, Sinclair, Wells, Whitman 等。

# 练习题参考答案

## Exercise 1

### I.

- |                  |          |
|------------------|----------|
| 1. 定语            | 11. 定语   |
| 2. awake 在此是动词谓语 | 12. 属性表语 |
| 3. 略去名词, 形容词作主语  | 13. 定语   |
| 4. 略去名词, 形容词作主语  | 14. 定语   |
| 5. 定语            | 15. 定语   |
| 6. 定语            | 16. 定语   |
| 7. 定语            | 17. 定语   |
| 8. 属性表语          | 18. 属性表语 |
| 9. 定语            | 19. 属性表语 |
| 10. 定语           | 20. 属性表语 |

### II.

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. 定语          | 13. 定语            |
| 2. 形容词名词化作介词宾语 | 14. 定语            |
| 3. 定语          | 15. high 在此是副词状语  |
| 4. 定语          | 16. 定语            |
| 5. 定语          | 17. 定语            |
| 6. 定语          | 18. crimson 形容词状语 |
| 7. 定语          | 19. 定语            |
| 8. 定语          | 20. 定语            |
| 9. 定语          | 21. 定语            |

10. 后位定语

11. 定语

12. 定语

22. 后位定语

23. 后位定语

24. 后位定语

### III.

1. 属性表语

2. 后位定语

3. 定语

4. 定语

5. 定语

6. 定语

7. 定语

8. 分词形式形容词定语

9. 定语

10. 定语

11. 定语

12. 属性表语

13. 定语

14. 定语

15. 定语

16. 属性表语

17. 定语

18. 定语

19. 定语

20. 定语

21. 属性表语

22. 定语

23. 定语

24. 分词形式形容词定语

25. 分词形式形容词定语

### IV.

1. brave/courageous;

drowning

2. gentle; quiet

3. exciting/interesting

4. worried/anxious

5. old; wooden

6. active/good-looking/

intelligent/etc.

7. hysterical, noisy/uproaring

8. fascinating

9. long; loose

10. tall; dark

## Exercise 2

### I.

- |                   |                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. pleasant 性质形容词 | 6. sublime 性质形容词         |
| 2. dead(不可比)状态形容词 | 7. solemn 性质形容词          |
| 3. dead(不可比)状态形容词 | 8. forlorn 性质形容词         |
| 4. glorious 性质形容词 | 9. shipwrecked(不可比)状态形容词 |
| 5. great 性质形容词    |                          |

### II.

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. active       | 8. hearty      |
| 2. vigorous     | 9. considerate |
| 3. genial       | 10. perfect    |
| 4. popular      | 11. healthy    |
| 5. robust       | 12. blunt      |
| 6. good-looking | 13. bright     |
| 7. pleasant     | 14. eager      |

### III.

1. 美国队赢得了奖杯。
2. 英国人比法国人保守。
3. 我父亲是英格兰人,但母亲是苏格兰人,他们都是英国人。
4. 英国人喜欢旅行。
5. 不久之后我知道了,原来他本人就是个英国人。

## Exercise 3

### I.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. hair-raising   | 4. breath-taking |
| 2. time-consuming | 5. award-winning |
| 3. home-made      |                  |

## II.

简单形容词	加-ing/-ed 及其他后缀形容词	复合形容词
7. bright,	1. crumbling,	10. flag-flying,
8. long,	2. fancied,	11. dry-throated,
9. secure,	3. mounting,	12. well-prodded,
14. old,	4. trackless,	21. silent-roaring,
15. black,	5. unfathomable,	22. grub-captured
17. dead,	6. grubbing,	
18. dry	13. gaping,	
	16. slimy,	
	19. crowded,	
	20. rotting	

## III.

1. well-read	4. over-loaded
2. tear-filled	5. snow-covered
3. well-trained	6. blue-eyed

## IV.

1. scientific	6. honourable
2. poetic	7. mysterious
3. childish	8. talkative
4. stationary	9. factual
5. faithful	10. competitive

## V.

1. disagreeable	6. undeniable
2. unaccustomed	7. impolite
3. inactive	8. indispensable
4. inadequate	9. irreparable

5. irrelevant

10. unorganized

### Exercise 4

#### I .

1. the Blind

2. the rich

3. the unusual

4. the cool

5. the dark

6. the quiet

7. The accused

8. The ancients

9. The wounded

10. the bravest/the brave

#### II .

1. The thunder storm broke out all of a sudden.

2. The old and the young all take part in the job.

3. The green makes you cheerful.

4. We lost the way in the dark.

5. They have much in common.

6. The brave aren't frightened by the danger.

#### III .

1. medical

2. silly

3. electric

4. black

5. classics

6. nobles

#### IV .

1. 市政厅

2. 情诗

3. 石头墙

4. 八月的天气

5. 一个厨房碗柜

6. 一条棉织品连衣裙

7. 一副太阳镜

8. 一块金表

#### V .

1. right

2. whole

5. sudden

6. alternative

3. cold, fat

4. long

7. better

8. late

## VI.

1. 形容词, 或看作副词; 后位定语

2. 分词; 后位定语

3. 复合形容词; 后位定语

4. astern 副词; 状语

5. 分词形式形容词; 定语

6. 分词形式形容词; 定语

7. 复合形容词; 定语

8. 分词; 后位定语

9. 形容词; 定语

10. motionless 形容词; 状语, 修饰 lies in that

11. 分词形式形容词; 定语

12. forth 副词; 状语

13. always 副词; 状语

14. forth 副词; 状语

## Exercise 5

### I.

1. clean (clean forget 惯用搭配)

2. clearly

3. freely

4. free (“不付费”)

5. hard

6. hardly (表否定语气副词)

7. highly (程度副词)

8. high

9. late

10. lately (表“最近”)

### II.

1. She always comes to school punctually at seven-thirty because she is an early riser.

2. They climbed carefully up the steep slope until they reached the towering peak of the mountain.

3. He won't be returning to his remote hometown because he is terribly occupied by his job.

4. She packed up all her things hurriedly and caught a fast train



out of the city.

5. He searched the banks of the river patiently until he found some hard clay.

III.

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. near——nearly                    | 4. closely——close; highly<br>(只表程度)——high |
| 2. smart——smartly                  | 5. tightly——tight (sit tight<br>“拿定主意”)   |
| 3. closely——close(紧接于动词后通常用 close) |   |

IV.

- |            |                                       |
|------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. 后位定语    | 10. near 宾语补语, keep sb.<br>near 补语不可缺 |
| 2. 后位定语    | 11. 前位定语                              |
| 3. 后位定语    | 12. 表语                                |
| 4. 前位定语    | 13. 表语                                |
| 5. 前位定语    | 14. 表语                                |
| 6. 前位定语    | 15. 前位定语                              |
| 7. 前位定语    | 16. high 在此是副词状语, 修饰 flew             |
| 8. 前位定语    |                                       |
| 9. sure 表语 |                                       |

### Exercise 6

I.

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. satisfying   | 6. offended    |
| 2. experienced  | 7. downhearted |
| 3. delighted    | 8. diseased    |
| 4. amusing      | 9. alarming    |
| 5. enterprising | 10. talented   |

II.

- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. torn, tearing     | 4. closed; closing         |
| 2. annoyed; annoying | 5. interested; interesting |
| 3. escaping; escaped |                            |

III.

1. He had a *bearded* face. His face was *bearded*.
2. The newspapers published *detailed* reports of the case.  
Newspaper reports of the case were very *detailed*.
3. Conflicts often arise between *neighboring* countries.
4. We live in an ancient *walled* town.
5. Flowered dresses are no longer in fashion.

IV.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. 分词形式形容词; 定语                           | 8. 分词; 构成谓语                                |
| 2. 形容词; 表语                               | 9. 形容词; 表语(意为 though<br>the job is trying) |
| 3. 形容词; 表语, 联系动词<br>felt 后               | 10. exerting 分词; 状语                        |
| 4. 形容词; 表语                               | 11. 分词; 构成谓语                               |
| 5. 分词; 构成谓语                              | 12. 形容词; 定语                                |
| 6. 分词; 构成谓语                              | 13. 形容词; 定语                                |
| 7. 分词; 宾语补语 (hear sb<br>..., saying 不可缺) |  |

### Exercise 7

I.

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. younger; healthier; older | 5. simplest; more complicated;<br>prettier |
| 2. happiest; luckiest        | 6. noisier                                 |
| 3. fat; taller               | 7. more wonderful                          |

4. much; better | 8. more

II .

1. Yes, it was bigger than our living-room.
2. No, it wasn't as cozy as our study.
3. Yes, it was darker than our bedroom.
4. No, it wasn't as convenient as our garage.
5. Yes, it is more attractive than our area.
6. Yes, it was smaller than our bathroom.
7. No, it wasn't as noisy as our street.
8. Yes, they are bigger than our windows.
9. Yes, it was smaller than our lift.
10. Yes, it is better than our area.

III .

- |                         |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
| 1. berry                | 4. sheet |
| 2. day/daylight/crystal | 5. bell  |
| 3. cucumber             |          |

IV .

1. Steve's office is farther away than Jill's school. Jill's school isn't as far away as Steve's office.
2. The Notting Hill Gate flat is larger than the Baxters' flat. The Baxters' flat isn't as large as the Notting Hill Gate flat.
3. Pam and Jeff have more holidays a year than Jill and Steve.
4. The rent for Steve's flat is more reasonable than the rent for Jeff's. The rent for Jeff's flat isn't as reasonable as the rent for Steve's flat.

V .

1. The book is the most interesting in his library.
2. The house is the most beautiful in the area.

3. The boy is taller than other boys in the class.
4. I am fonder of the picture than the others.
5. Lead is heavier than aluminum.
6. The Earth is a little (bit) larger than the Venus.
7. Is it true that a plane is faster than a bird?

### Exercise 8

#### I .

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. publicly</li> <li>2. essentially</li> <li>3. pleasantly</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. ferociously/cruelly</li> <li>5. peacefully; imaginatively/<br/>pleasantly</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

#### II .

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. to</li> <li>2. with</li> <li>3. of</li> <li>4. about</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. with</li> <li>6. of</li> <li>7. for</li> <li>8. to</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

#### III .

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. pretty interesting</li> <li>2. a little hot</li> <li>3. a rather larger group</li> <li>4. somewhat sumptuous</li> <li>5. slightly difficult</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. quite well informed</li> <li>7. not particularly expensive</li> <li>8. fairly tiring</li> <li>9. quite glad</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

#### IV .

1. We are sure (of the fact) that he is innocent.
2. I am proud that you get full mark in your English examination.
3. My girl-friend is insistent to buy the expensive dress.
4. You are very kind to have my bike repaired.
5. French perfume is expensive to be used every day.

6. Jasmine and Nick are certain to have won the first prize.
7. Jasmine and Nick are certain to go out every evening.
8. You must be crazy to give your opinion on their affairs.
9. I am happy to meet you.
10. I am glad that you are back so soon.

V.

1. How long was the queue?  
The queue was 100 yards long.
2. How old are you?  
I am 20 years old.
3. How deep is the ocean?  
The ocean is a mile deep.
4. How high is Mount Everest?  
Mount Everest is 8,708 metres high.

### Exercise 9

I.

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. the</li> <li>2. a</li> <li>3. the</li> </ol> |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. a</li> <li>5. the</li> </ol> |
|--|--|--|

II.

1. 他是最后一个到达的。
2. 她最不应该受到指责。
3. 明年我将去那儿。
4. 第二天上午他又来了。
5. 紧接着他听到的是他房间门上的急切敲门声。
6. 布伦达吃下了最后一口煎蛋。

III.

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a third of the business | 6. fifth               |
| 2. three fourths           | 7. The first           |
| 3. Three fourths           | 8. My first; My second |
| 4. a fifth                 | 9. This fourth         |
| 5. two fifths              | 10. a third            |

Exercise 10

I.

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. two dozen delicious chocolate | 4. four long                   |
| 2. five hundred steep            | 5. several thoroughbred racing |
| 3. half a dozen colorful silk    |                                |

II.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. dozens —— dozen       | 4. hundred —— hundreds   |
| 2. thousands —— thousand | 5. million —— millions   |
| 3. millions —— million   | 6. thousands —— thousand |

III.

- |        |        |
|--------|--------|
| 1. yes | 5. no  |
| 2. no  | 6. no  |
| 3. no  | 7. yes |
| 4. yes | 8. no  |

IV.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. half a loaf:<br>a loaf 指仅有的一块或多块<br>中的一块 | 4. half the loaf,                             |
| 2. a half loaf,                             | 5. half of the loaf,                          |
| 3. one half loaf:                           | 6. a half of the loaf,                        |
|   | 7. one half of the loaf:<br>the loaf 指大家确知的、确 |

a/one half loaf 仅有半块或 | 定的那块  
多块中有半块

前面或中间没有冠词 a/the, 或前面没有数词 one 的词组 half loaf(8 中)/half of loaf(9 中)是错误说法。